Systematic Index of Dogmatic and Moral Matters

(*A canon of the* Code of canon law *is indicated by the letter C; a condemned proposition by the number in italics*)

# REVELATION

## THE POSSIBILITY AND NECESSITY OF REVELATION

**I a** Revelation strictly so-called or the speaking of God to man is possible and useful, [*1706*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1706), [1807 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1807); supernatural, [1636](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1636), [1787](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1787), [*2020 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2020); morally (necessary) concerning natural religious truths, [1642 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1642); absolutely necessary concerning the supernatural, [1786](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1786), [1808](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1808); can be made believable by external signs, [1622 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1622), [1627 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1627), [1638 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1638), [1651](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1651), [1790](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1790), [1793](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1793), [1812 f](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1812).

## THE FACT AND OBJECTS (MYSTERIES) OF REVELATION

**I b** The Most Holy Trinity revealed some things, through Moses, the prophets and their other servants, and finally through Christ, [428](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.428), [1785](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1785); Christ, so that he might teach that He is the Messias, spoke and performed miracles, [*2028*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2028).

Revelation is not a work of men or some philosophical discovery, [1636](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1636), [1639](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1639), [1705](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1705), [1800](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1800) [*2020 f*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2020)., or a mere evolution of Christian understanding, [*2054*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2054)*,* [*2074 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2074), but a determined body of doctrine applicable to all times and men, [*2059*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2059)*,* [*2078 ff*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2078).

Besides truths accessible even to human reason Christian revelation contains mysteries widely so-called, as the eternal decrees of God, [1785](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1785); strictly so-called, which are inaccessible to reason, [1616 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1616), [1642ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1642), [1655](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1655), [*1662*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1662), [1668 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1668), [1682](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1682), [1709](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1709), [1795](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1795), [1816](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1816), [*1915 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1915); moreover, they even transcend angelic understanding, [1673](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1673), which with the progress of science cannot be understood or demonstrated, [1642 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1642), [1668f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1668), [1671ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1671), [*1704*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1704)*,* [*1709*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1709), [1796](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1796), [1816](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1816), [1818](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1818); nevertheless, they do not contradict reason, [1634 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1634), [1649](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1649), [*1706*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1706), but exceed it, [1635](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1635), [1671](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1671), [1795](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1795), and always remain obscure, [442](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.442), [1796](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1796); are not inventions of men contrary to the common good, [1634](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1634), [*1707*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1707).

Revelation is not imperfect, [1705](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1705), nor as such to be made perfect through progress, [1636](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1636), [1639](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1639), [1656](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1656), [*1705*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1705), [1800](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1800); nor is it to be changed in any way into another meaning, [1800](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1800), [1818](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1818); it is immutable, [125](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.125), [148](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.148), [160f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.160), [212](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.212), [293](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.293), [308](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.308), [336](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.336), [1656](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1656), [*2060 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2060), [2145](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2145); it was complete with the Apostles, [783](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.783), [*2021*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2021).

## THE ACCEPTANCE OF REVELATION (FAITH)

**I c** Divine Revelation requires internal faith, [1637](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1637), [1681](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1681), [1789](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1789), [1810](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1810); and that divine (i.e. because of the pre-eminent authority of God revealing) [1789](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1789), [1811](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1811), [C[[1]](#footnote-2)1323, sec. 1](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1323,_1$C2$B0), which presupposes revelation previously made, [1622](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1622), [1650](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1650), and known by the use of reason, [*1068*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1068), [1626](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1626), [1651](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1651), [1670](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1670), [1790](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1790), [2146](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2146) (even in the scholastic method, [1652](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1652)).

Knowledge does not suffice that is only probable, [*1171*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1171), nor merely subjective (of the Pseudo-mystics) [*1273*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1273), nor merely internal experience, [*2081*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2081), or private inspiration, [1812](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1812); but there is required a secure knowledge of the fact of revelation, [*1171*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1171), [1623ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1623), [1634ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1634), [1639](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1639), [*1715*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1715), [1790](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1790), [1812](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1812), [2106 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2106) (although an infidel lead by a less probable opinion, not believing is not excused from infidelity, [*1154*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1154)). No one invited to embrace the faith is to be forced, [1875](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1875); but revelation once accepted under the teaching authority of the Church cannot be called into doubt by a suspended assent, [1794](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1794), [1815](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1815); hence a positive doubt is not the basis of theological investigation (Hermes) [1619 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1619), [1815](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1815); all indifferentism and latitudinarianism is to be rejected, [1613 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1613), [1646f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1646), [1677](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1677), [1689](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1689), [1715ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1715), [1815](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1815), [1874](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1874), [1932](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1932), [2199](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2199).

## THE POWERS, DUTIES, LIMITS OF REASON

**I d** Not all certitude is founded on faith, [*553 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.553); natural certitude is had not only of the first principle or those things which can be resolved to it, [*558*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.558), [3020f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3020), but with a certitude of evidence (admitting of grades, [*556*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.556)) we know material substance, [557](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.557), the efficient causality of things, [*559 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.559), [3020](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3020); the distinction of things from God, [*562 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.562), and temporal existence, [*565*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.565); the existence of one’s own intellect and will, [*566*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.566); that not all appearances are true, [*567*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.567); that God and creatures are something, [*568*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.568). The first and unique principle is not “If something is, something is” [570](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.570). Future, even contingent, things have a determined truth, [*719 ff*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.719). Immediate knowledge of God (according to the mind of the Ontologists) is not essential to the human intellect, [1659 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1659)—Truth itself is immutable, [*2058*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2058)*,* [*3010 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3010), [3021 ff](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3021). Reason without revelation and even without grace can know some religious truths before the faith is accepted, [*1022*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1022)*,* [*1391*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1391), [1616ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1616), [1626](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1626), [1650](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1650), [1652](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1652), [1670](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1670), [1785](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1785), [1795](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1795), [1806](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1806), [2072](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2072), like the existence of God, [1622](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1622), [1650](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1650), [1670](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1670), [1672](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1672), [1785](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1785), [1806](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1806), [*2072 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2072) (and demonstrate it, [1670](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1670), [2145](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2145), as even His nature and attributes, [1670](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1670)); the infinity of God, [1622](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1622), the spirituality and immortality of souls, [1650](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1650), the freedom of man, [1650](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1650), the fact of creation, [1806](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1806), miracles, [1813](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1813), the divinity of Mosaic revelation, [1623](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1623), [1627](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1627), and Christian, [1624 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1624), [1627](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1627).

Before the reception of faith reason can and ought to know for certain (besides the fact of revelation) the motives for credibility (besides the preambles of faith) [1171](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1171), [1622ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1622), [1634f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1634), [1637ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1637), [1651](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1651), [1790ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1790), [1799](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1799), [1812](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1812), [2145](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2145), [3005](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3005), [*3019*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3019), [3020](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3020), among which the prophecies and miracles of Christ, [*1707*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1707), [1790](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1790), [1813](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1813), [*2028*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2028), [2145](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2145), and the Church itself, of itself, are outstanding, [1638](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1638), [1794](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1794), [1957](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1957).

After the reception of the faith reason can attain a kind of understanding of the mysteries, [1796](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1796), [3020](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3020), not, however, perceive all revealed truths or prove them with evident argument, [282](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.282), [442](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.442), [1616](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1616), [1626f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1626), [1642](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1642), [1655f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1655), [1668f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1668), [1655f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1655), [1668f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1668), [1671ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1671), [1682](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1682), [*1704*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1704)*,* [*1709*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1709), [1796](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1796), [1816](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1816), [*1915*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1915), [2120](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2120); thus, v.g., with the natural light it cannot attain its supernatural end and its means, [1668 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1668), [1671ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1671), [1791](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1791).

Human reason is not immune from all error, [1618](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1618); wherefore it is not to be relied upon very much, [1679](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1679); it is not autonomous, but subject to uncreated truth, [1789](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1789), [1810](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1810); it is not the sole norm by which truths (necessary for salvation) are known, [1616 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1616), [1619ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1619), [1634f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1634), [1636](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1636), [1639](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1639), [*1703 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1703), [1786](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1786), [1793](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1793), [1808](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1808); nor is it to be made equal to religion, [1642](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1642), [*1708*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1708).

Man does not have an unmodified freedom of feeling, speaking, writing, [1613 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1613), [1666ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1666), [1674](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1674), [1679](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1679), [1690](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1690), [*1779*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1779), [1877](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1877), but limited, [1932](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1932).

## THE MUTUAL RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN REASON AND REVELATION

**I e** Revelation and reason cannot contradict one another, [738](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.738), [1634f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1634), [1649](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1649), [1797ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1797), [1878](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1878), [1947](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1947), [2023f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2023), [2109](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2109), [2146](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2146), nor is faith opposed to human reason, [1635](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1635), [1706](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1706).

Reason explains, guards, and defends revealed truths, [1635](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1635), [1652](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1652), [1799](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1799).

Revelation, on the other hand, frees reason from errors, enlightens, and strengthens it, [195](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.195), [1616](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1616), [1635](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1635), [1642ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1642), [1786](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1786), [1799](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1799), [1807](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1807), [3005](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3005); fosters the rectitude and purity of natural knowledge, [1786](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1786); is the infallible director of philosophy, [1656](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1656), [1681](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1681), and its negative norm, [1681](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1681), [*1714*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1714); not only the philosopher but philosophy itself is under the teaching authority of faith, [1674 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1674), [1682f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1682), [*1710*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1710)*,* [*1714*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1714), [2073](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2073), [2085f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2085), and ought to be ancillary to theology, [442 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.442), [1656](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1656), [*1710*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1710), [2087](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2087), [2120](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2120); hence errors of reason are rightly and beneficially proscribed by the Church, [1674 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1674), [1711](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1711), [1798](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1798), [1817](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1817), [2093](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2093); whose judgment is to be followed even with regard to things not yet expressly defined, [1683 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1683), [*1712*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1712)*,* [*1722*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1722), [1820](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1820), [*2008*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2008), [2113f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2113), [3013](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3013), [C[[2]](#footnote-3)1324](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1324).

Theology is to be treated otherwise than natural science, [442 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.442), [1642](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1642), [1656](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1656), [1666f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1666), [1670ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1670), [1681](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1681), [*1708*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1708), [1795](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1795), [1808](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1808), [2104](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2104); the method and principles of scholastic theology are not to be rejected, [1657](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1657), [1680](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1680), [*1713*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1713)*,* [*3008*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3008); all speculation concerning revealed truths should be founded upon the teaching of the Church and the Fathers, [320](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.320), [323](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.323), [325](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.325), [1616f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1616), [1619ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1619), [1657](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1657), [2086](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2086), [2120](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2120), [3012f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3012), and even a reasonable form in words is to be retained and the commonly received terminology is to be preserved, [320](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.320), [442f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.442), [1658](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1658), [1800](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1800), [*3009 ff*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3009).

## THE SOURCES OF REVELATION

**I f** The written source of revelation is *the canonical books of both Testaments* [32](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.32), [84](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.84), [92](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.92), [162](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.162), [245](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.245), [706f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.706), [783f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.783), [1787](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1787), [1809](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1809), [2001ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2001), [2116ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2116), [C[[3]](#footnote-4)1323 sec. 1](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1323,_1$C2$B0), of which the authentic version is had in the Vulgate, [785](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.785), [1787](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1787), [2292](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2292).

These complete books with all their parts are to be received as sacred and canonical, [784](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.784), [1787](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1787), and to be faithfully guarded, [2198](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2198), as from God, who is the author of both Testaments, [28](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.28), [348](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.348), [421](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.421), [464](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.464), [706f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.706), [783](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.783), [1787](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1787), [1952](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1952), [*2009 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2009), or from the Holy Ghost speaking, [1951](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1951); inspired, [706](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.706) (the nature of inspiration: [1952](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1952), [*2009 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2009)) and as such handed down to the Church, [783 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.783), [1787](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1787), [1809](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1809), [*2010*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2010)[*2061*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2061), [2090](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2090), [2100](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2100), [2102](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2102), [2115](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2115), [2179 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2179); and to be judged and interpreted according to the unanimous consent of the Fathers and the sense of the Church, [786](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.786), [995](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.995), [1788](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1788), [1944](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1944), according to sound principles, [1946 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1946), [*2012 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2012)*,* [*2061*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2061), [2146](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2146), [2186ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2186), [2293](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2293), [3002](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3002), [3016](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3016), [3029f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3029), in particular the books which are considered historical, [1979 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1979), [*2013 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2013), [2186f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2186), [2294](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2294); Pentateuch, [1997 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1997), and its early chapters, [2121 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2121), [3002](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3002); the Book of Isaias, [2115 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2115); Book of Psalms, [2129 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2129); the Gospels according to Matthew, [2148 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2148), [2164ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2164), Mark, and Luke, [2155 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2155), [2164ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2164), John, [2110 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2110); Acts of the Apostles, [2166 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2166) pastoral epistles of St. Paul, [2171 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2171); Epistle to the Hebrews, [2176 ff](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2176).

True inerrancy belongs to Sacred Scripture, [494](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.494), [570f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.570), [783](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.783), [*1707*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1707), [1787](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1787), [*2011 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2011), [2102](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2102), [2179ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2179), [2186ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2186), [*3015*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3015).

The reading of Sacred Scripture is not necessary for all, [*1429*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1429)*,* [*1567*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1567); nor fitting for all, [*1429 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1429), [1604 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1604); nevertheless it is by no means forbidden, [1630 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1630); but any sort of vernacular version is not permitted, [1603 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1603), [1607f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1607), nor any one without notes and approbation, [1630 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1630), [C[[4]](#footnote-5)1391](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1391).

Another source of revelation is *ecclesiastical tradition* [125](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.125), [159](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.159), [164](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.164), [173](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.173), [212](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.212), [302f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.302), [308](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.308), [320](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.320), [336](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.336), [349](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.349), [442](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.442), [783f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.783), [786](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.786), [995](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.995), [1469ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1469), [1787](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1787), [1792](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1792), [2083](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2083), [2095](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2095), [2147](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2147), [3014](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3014), [C[[5]](#footnote-6)1323 sec. I](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1323,_1$C2$B0); the authority of the Fathers in matters of faith and morals is the highest, [270 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.270), [302](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.302), [303](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.303), [320](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.320), [336](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.336), [1320](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1320), [1657](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1657), [1788](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1788), [1948](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1948), [2083](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2083), [2145ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2145), especially of St. Augustine, [127](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.127), [173a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.173a) (with due restriction, [*1320*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1320)); likewise the common teachings of the theologians are to be held, [*609*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.609)*,* [*651*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.651)*,* [*1576*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1576), [1579](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1579), [1652](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1652), [1680ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1680), but particularly St. Thomas Aquinas, [2191 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2191), [3022](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3022), [C[[6]](#footnote-7)1366 sec. 2](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1366); preserving freedom concerning the controversies discussed in Catholic schools, [2192](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2192); modern authors are not rashly to be preferred, [*1127*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1127); the practises of the Church are a norm of belief, [140](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.140), [995](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.995), “so that the law of praying establishes the law of believing” [139](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.139), [2200](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2200).

*No other* (public) *source* of revelation exists outside of the canonical books and apostolic tradition, [783](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.783), [2021](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2021), so that as a result faith or Christian doctrine is immutable, [160](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.160), [1656](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1656), [*1705*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1705), [1800](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1800), [1818](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1818), [*2060 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2060), safeguarding a progress of fuller knowledge of the things revealed, [1639](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1639), [1800](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1800).

# THE CHURCH

## ESSENCE

**II a** The Church is a *society* instituted by Christ God, [703](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.703), [1618](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1618), [1821ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1821), [1959](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1959), [*2052 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2052), [2088](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2088), [2091ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2091), [2145](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2145), [C[[7]](#footnote-8)100, sec. 1](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_100); a people one in faith, end, and things conducing to the end; subject to one and the same power, a society divine in origin, by its end and things proximately serving, insofar as it pertains to its end, are human members, [1959](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1959), constituting one mystical body under Christ the head, [468](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.468), [705](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.705), [*3019*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3019); formal from the side of Christ, [480](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.480), [2291](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2291). The end of the Church is to pour forth salvation procured through Christ and at the same time the benefits emanating therefrom upon all men of all ages, [1821](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1821), [1955](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1955), [2203](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2203); and especially to protect the doctrine of Christ by a living and authentic teaching authority and to propagate it complete and uncorrupted, [1957](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1957), [2145](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2145).

It is a society perfect and independent, [330 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.330), [*498*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.498), [1698](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1698), [*1719 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1719), [1841f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1841), [1847](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1847), [1867](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1867), [1869](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1869), [2203](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2203); an immutable organization, [*2053*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2053); with the right to possess even temporal things, [1697](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1697), [*1726 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1726), and with temporal power, [*1725*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1725), and immunity, [*1730*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1730)*,* [*1732*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1732), and its proper court, [*1731*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1731); visible and knowable from the *marks* inherent in it and distinguishing it from the other religious bodies, [86](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.86), [223](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.223), [247](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.247), [347](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.347), [430f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.430), [464](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.464), [468](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.468), [999](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.999), [1686](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1686), [1793f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1793), [1821ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1821), [1955 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1955); it is hierarchical, [41 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.41), [44f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.44), [150ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.150), [272](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.272), [361](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.361), [424](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.424), [426](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.426), [434](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.434), [*498*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.498), [675](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.675), [687](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.687), [853](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.853), [960](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.960), [966f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.966), [2145](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2145), [C[[8]](#footnote-9)107](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_107), [C[[9]](#footnote-10)108](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_108), [C[[10]](#footnote-11)329 sec. 1](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_329), [C[[11]](#footnote-12)948](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_948), and so lay persons have no power to dispose of ecclesiastical goods, [361](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.361), in fact, not even priests of lesser rank by reason of their ordination, [*1509*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1509); nor is the power derived into the hierarchies from the community of the faithful, [*1500*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1500)*,* [*1502f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1502)*,* [*1822 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1822); it is a monarchy i.e., constituted under one head having supreme power, [44](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.44), [*498*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.498)*,* [*633*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.633)*,* [*658f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.658)*,* [*1325*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1325), [1500](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1500), [*1503*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1503), [1698f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1698), [1821](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1821), [2091](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2091), [*2147a*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2147a), [C[[12]](#footnote-13)218 f.](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_218); it is one (in faith, rule, and communion, [1960](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1960)) and unique, [14](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.14), [86](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.86), [246f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.246), [347](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.347), [423](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.423), [430](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.430), [464](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.464), [468](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.468), [480](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.480), [1685ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1685), [1954 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1954) (not twofold, carnal and spiritual, [*485*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.485)); holy, [1](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1), [2](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2), [6](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.6), [9](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.9), [86](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.86), [288](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.288), [347](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.347), [423](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.423), [464](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.464), [468](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.468), [1686](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1686); catholic, [1](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1), [6](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.6), [9](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.9), [14](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.14), [54](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.54), [86](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.86), [288](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.288), [347](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.347), [423](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.423), [464](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.464), [468](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.468), [1686](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1686); apostolic, [14](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.14), [86](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.86), [247](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.247), [288](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.288), [347](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.347), [423](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.423), [464](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.464), [468](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.468), [570a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.570a), [1686](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1686); which is Roman, [460](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.460), [570a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.570a), [1686](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1686), [1794](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1794), see, [IIIa-i](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?pos=IDX.2.3.1%3AIIIA); it is perpetual, [1793](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1793), [1821](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1821), [1955](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1955), [*2052*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2052); it is necessary to all for salvation; “outside the Church there is no salvation,” nor remission of sins, [2 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2), [14](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.14), [39f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.39), [246f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.246), [423](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.423), [430](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.430), [468f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.468), [570b](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.570b), [714](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.714), [999f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.999), [1473](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1473), [1613f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1613), [1646ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1646), [1677](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1677), [1716ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1716), [1954ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1954), [2199](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2199), [3019](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3019), [C[[13]](#footnote-14)731 sec. 2](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_731,_$C2$A72), [C[[14]](#footnote-15)1322 sec. 2](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1322); hence:

**II b** Those ought (at least in desire) to be members of the Church who wish to be saved, [388](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.388), [468](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.468), [*629*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.629), [1646f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1646), [C[[15]](#footnote-16)1322 sec. 2](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1322); members are the baptized (even children, [869 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.869)) not only the predestined or faithful, [*627*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.627)*,* [*629*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.629)*,* [*631f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.631)*,* [*647*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.647)*,* [*1422*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1422)*,* [*1515*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1515), but the perfect and sinners, [*473*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.473)*,* [*838*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.838)*,* [*1358*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1358)*,* [*1413*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1413)*,* [*1422–1438*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1422-1438), even the foreknown, [*631f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.631)*,* [*646*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.646), princes and kings, [1688](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1688), [1754](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1754), eastern and western, [*1738*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1738); but the predestined are not necessarily always members of the Church, [*631f*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.631).

The Church is not divided into carnal and spiritual, [*485*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.485), nor divided into three branches, namely, Roman-Catholic, Greek-schismatic, Anglican, [1685 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1685), [2199](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2199).

The non-baptized do not belong to the body of the Church, [895](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.895); falling away from a defined doctrine they fall away from the unity of the Church, [1641](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1641).

## POWER

### *Power of Teaching* (Infallibility)

**II c** The fact of infallibility. The Church has by divine right the right and the office of guarding revealed doctrine, [1675](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1675), and of expounding it, [*1444*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1444), [C[[16]](#footnote-17)1322 sec. 1](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1322), and in this function it is infallible, [160](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.160), [*767*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.767)*,* [*1512*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1512), [1617](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1617), [1839](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1839), [1957f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1957), [1969](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1969), [2147](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2147), through the indwelling Holy Spirit, [302](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.302), by whose assistance it preserves inviolably the deposit of faith, [159 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.159), [*1445*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1445)*,* [*1501*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1501), and infallibly explains, [1797 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1797), [1800](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1800), [C[[17]](#footnote-18)1322](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1322), nor has it ever erred, [*1723*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1723).

**II d** The subject of infallibility: The *Pope* is infallible even without the consent of the Church, [*1325*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1325), [C[[18]](#footnote-19)1323 sec. 2](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1323,_2$C2$B0); cf. [III f](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?pos=IDX.2.3.2.2%3AIIIF).

Ecumenical Councils together with the Pope confirming them, [164](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.164), [173](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.173), [212](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.212), [226f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.226), [250\*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.250*), [*768*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.768)[*1723*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1723), [C[[19]](#footnote-20)222 sec. 2](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_222,_$C2$A72), [C[[20]](#footnote-21)227 f.](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_227), which represent the universal Church, [270 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.270), [349](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.349), [657ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.657), [*769 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.769), [999f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.999), [1085 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1085); they are taught by the Holy Spirit, [930](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.930), [C[[21]](#footnote-22)1322 f.](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1322); for which reason they have never erred in matters of faith and morals, [*1723*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1723); they are constituted by the bishops, [340](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.340), and others according to the norm of [C[[22]](#footnote-23)223](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_223); they do not depend upon the presence of princes, [331](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.331), [340](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.340). Particular and national councils are not infallible, [1593](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1593), [*1736*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1736)*,* [*C*[[23]](#footnote-24)*1326*](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1326); hence in matters of faith and morals they do not give unalterable judgments, [*1511*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1511)*,* [*1593*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1593)*,* [*1736*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1736); furthermore, diocesan councils do not judge concerning the decrees of higher sees, [1511](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1511).

*The Church dispersed throughout the world* is infallible in proposing the doctrines of Christ handed down, [1683](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1683), [1792](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1792), [C[[24]](#footnote-25)1323 sec. 1](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1323,_1$C2$B0).

*Individual Bishops*, although they are not infallible in teaching, nevertheless are the true doctors and masters, under the authority of the Roman Pontiff, of the faithful committed to their care, [*1506*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1506), [C[[25]](#footnote-26)1326](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1326); not however, *presbyters*—although joined in a synod, [*1510 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1510), not the *laity* [1936c](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1936c), [1958](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1958), [*2006*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2006).

**II e** The object of infallibility is things pertaining to faith and morals, [*767*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.767)*,* [*786*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.786)*,* [*1449 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1449), [1797f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1797), [1800](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1800), [*2005*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2005); and the teaching that the religion of the Catholic Church alone is true, [*1721*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1721), and what are especially joined with the faith, [1948](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1948) (not however ordinations for rule, [333](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.333)), the interpretation of the true sense of Sacred Scripture, [32](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.32), [786](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.786), [995](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.995), [1788](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1788), [*2202 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2202)*,* [*2061*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2061); the condemnation of errors concerning faith and morals, [161](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.161), [2146](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2146), [2211](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2211), [*2253*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2253); and even dogmatic facts, [224 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.224), [1098f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1098), [1350](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1350), [*1513 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1513), in such a way that dogmas are the norm of believing and acting, [*2026*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2026).

**II f** The exercise of infallibility: The Church exercises her infallibility either in solemn judgment or in ordinary universal teaching, [1683](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1683), [1792](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1792), [C[[26]](#footnote-27)1323 sec. 1](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1323,_1$C2$B0), by defining revealed truths, [*1721*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1721), by watching over the faith of its subjects, [1444](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1444), [C[[27]](#footnote-28)247](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_247), and this by right and office, [1797 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1797); it cannot neglect truth, [*1449*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1449), nor impugn it, [*1450*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1450), nor permit obscurity in the more important truths of faith and morals, [*489*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.489)*,* [*1445f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1445)*,* [*1449*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1449)*,* [*1501*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1501)*,* [*1552f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1552)*,* [*1567*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1567)*,* [*1576 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1576), [1821](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1821), [*1967*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1967); nor again treat of errors once (definitely) condemned, [161](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.161); nor change the sense of defined dogma, [*2080*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2080); nor can it establish harmful discipline, [*1578*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1578); hence acquiescence is to be given to its judgment even in things not yet expressly defined, [1683 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1683), [*1712*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1712)*,* [*1722*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1722), [1820](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1820), [2113f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2113), [3013](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3013), [C[[28]](#footnote-29)1324](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1324); nor does obsequious silence suffice, [1350](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1350).

In its right and office of teaching all nations the Church is independent of all civil power [C[[29]](#footnote-30)1322 sec. 2](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1322).

By right it demands a previous censorship of books, [*2001*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2001).

## THE POWER OF RULING (JURISDICTION)

**II g** The *nature* of jurisdiction: The Church has the jurisdiction given to the Apostles and to their successors, [*379*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.379), for obtaining the salvation of souls and the purity of faith, [1675](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1675), complete and total in religious matters, [*1285 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1285)*,* [*1502*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1502)*,* [*1505*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1505), [1841](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1841), [1847](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1847), [1866](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1866), [C[[30]](#footnote-31)1553](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1553), and at least indirect in temporal matters, [469](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.469) (two swords) [1697](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1697), [*1724*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1724); and that divine, [469](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.469), and perpetual, [287](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.287), [*1577*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1577), [1688](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1688), [1696](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1696), [2093](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2093), even relative as to the external order, [1696 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1696); wherefore legislative, judicial, and coactive power belong to her, [411](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.411), [*499 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.499)*,* [*1504 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1504), [1697](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1697), [*1724*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1724); it punishes especially with ecclesiastical censures, [357](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.357), [*499*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.499)*,* [*591ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.591)*,* [*610*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.610)*,* [*643 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.643), [681ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.681), [763f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.763), [*1440 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1440)*,* [*1546 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1546), C[[31]](#footnote-32)2214 sec. 1 (which does not cease when the guilty one is corrected and the contumacy comes to an end, [*1144*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1144)), not however of itself by bloody execution, [401](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.401); and this jurisdiction does not depend upon the probity or the predestination of the subject, [*486*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.486)*,* [*545*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.545)*,* [*588*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.588)*,* [*595*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.595)*,* [*637*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.637)*,* [*646*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.646)*,* [*648*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.648)*,* [*650*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.650)*,* [*656*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.656), [661](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.661). Even the perfect are bound by the precepts of the Church, [*473*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.473).

**II h** The *objects* and *functions* of ecclesiastical jurisdiction are especially these: the administration of the sacraments, [437](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.437), [*491 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.491), [931](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.931), [1744](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1744), [C[[32]](#footnote-33)731](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_731); in particular, matrimonial cases, [973 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.973), [978](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.978), [982](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.982), [1454](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1454), [1500a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1500a), [*1559 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1559), [1600](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1600), [1640](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1640), [*1768 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1768), [1865](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1865), [1991ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1991), [2066ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2066), [C[[33]](#footnote-34)1016](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1016), C[[34]](#footnote-35)1960; preaching the divine word, [434](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.434), [*449 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.449), [594](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.594), [687f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.687), [C[[35]](#footnote-36)1327 f.](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1327); the election and ordination of bishops, [339](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.339), [363](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.363), [1750f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1750), [1842](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1842), [C[[36]](#footnote-37)109](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_109), and clerics, [960](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.960), [967](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.967), [C[[37]](#footnote-38)109](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_109), [C[[38]](#footnote-39)1352](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1352); the care of religious and nuns, [*1752 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1752), [C[[39]](#footnote-40) 487 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_487); the granting of indulgences, [467](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.467), [550](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.550), [*622*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.622)*,* [*676*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.676)*,* [*729*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.729), [989](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.989), [998](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.998), [1471](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1471), [C[[40]](#footnote-41)911](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_911); the institution of feasts, [*1573*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1573), [C[[41]](#footnote-42)1247](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1247); the direction of theological study, [422](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.422), [1666ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1666), [*1733*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1733)*,* [*1746*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1746), [1843ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1843), [C[[42]](#footnote-43)589](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_589), [C[[43]](#footnote-44)1365](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1365); of the reading and interpretation of Sacred Scripture, [*1567*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1567), [1602ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1602), [1630ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1630), [1941ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1941), [1979f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1979), [1997ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1997), [2001 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2001); of the religious institution (in schools) [1695](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1695), [*1745ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1745), [C[[44]](#footnote-45)1372f.](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1327), [C[[45]](#footnote-46)1381](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1381); *see* [XIp](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?pos=IDX.2.13.1.8%3AXIP); generally the care of all sacred things and in some way even of temporal and external things, [361](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.361), [*458*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.458)[*495*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.495), [685f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.685), [*1286*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1286)[*1322*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1322)*,* [*1504*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1504)*,* [*1696f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1696)*,* [*1724 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1724), [1841](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1841), [2253](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2253), [C[[46]](#footnote-47)1495 f.](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1495), [C[[47]](#footnote-48)1499](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1499).

## RELATIONSHIPS

**II i** *To the State*: The Church in its own affairs is independent of the civil power, [161\*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.161*), [305](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.305), [333](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.333), [361](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.361), [*1575*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1575), [1688](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1688), [1697f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1697), [1719f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1719), [1728ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1728), [*1741 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1741), [1841f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1841), [1847](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1847), [1867](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1867), [1869](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1869), [2190](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2190), [C[[48]](#footnote-49)1556](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1566), [C[[49]](#footnote-50)1597](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1597), C[[50]](#footnote-51)2198, C[[51]](#footnote-52)2214, especially in matrimonial cases: cf. [II h](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?pos=IDX.2.2.3%3AIIH); it is not an obstacle to the temporal prosperity of the state, [333](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.333), [1936](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1936); nor hostile “to the more recent discipline of states” [1878 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1878); let there be a single religion of the State, [*1777 ff*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1777).

Its jurisdiction extends even over princes and kings, [469](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.469), [1322](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1322), [1688](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1688), [*1754*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1754), [C[[52]](#footnote-53)1557 sec. 1](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1557), C[[53]](#footnote-54)2227; even nations, [1688](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1688); over public life, the family, education (in Christian schools) [*1745 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1745), [1995](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1995), [2197](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2197), [C[[54]](#footnote-55)1372–1383](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1372-1383), *see* [XIp](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?pos=IDX.2.13.1.8%3AXIP); for this reason it can invalidate unjust laws, [1842](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1842), and call upon the secular arm, [401](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.401), [468f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.468), [*640*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.640), [682](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.682), [*773*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.773), [1689ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1689), C[[55]](#footnote-56)2198; the Church cannot however, involve itself without reason merely in political or earthly business, [1841](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1841), [2190](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2190); and it recognizes the power of a civil ruler, even a sinner, [*595*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.595)*,* [*597*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.597)*,* [*656*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.656). The Church has the right to possess independently of the State, [*495*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.495)*,* [*596*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.596), [685](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.685); it is rightly endowed by secular rulers, [*619*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.619). In a conflict of laws the Church is to be obeyed, not the state, [*1742*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1742), [1841f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1841), [1850](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1850), [1936b](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1936b).

National churches independent of the Pope are not to be tolerated, [*1324*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1324)*,* [*1737*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1737).

The Church is not to be separated from the State, [1615](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1615), [1688](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1688), [*1755*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1755), [1867](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1867), [1995](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1995), [2092f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2092), but a way of concord is to be entered upon, [1866](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1866), [1870](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1870), [2205](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2205).

The Church recognizes the State and its laws, [1841](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1841), [1855ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1855), [1866ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1866), [1933 ff](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1933). The State cannot govern without concern for religion, and that the Catholic religion, [1689](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1689); nor can it proclaim freedom of conscience and worship, [1690](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1690) (saving the necessary tolerance of worships, [1874](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1874)); nor the right of openly manifesting any sort of concept, [1690](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1690), or substitute the force of fact for the notion of true law, [1691](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1691), [1759](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1759); nor persecute religious families, [1692](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1692), or take away the permission to collect alms, [1693](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1693), or permit servile work on certain days, [1693](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1693). The State is not the source of all law, [*1739*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1739); nor does it have an indirect negative power in sacred things (so called, *exequatur, appellatio ab abusu*) [*1741*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1741), [1866](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1866); nor the prevailing right in a conflict, [*1742*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1742), nor the right to rescind a concordat, [*1743*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1743).

**II k** *To Sciences*: The Church has authority over philosophers and philosophy, [1682](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1682), [1710](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1710), even in things not yet expressly defined, [1683 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1683); for which reason it should not tolerate philosophic errors, [1674 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1674), [*1711 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1711); errors in faith cannot be legitimate scientific conclusions, [1797 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1797), [1947](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1947); the Church does not restrain sciences from their proper methods, [1681](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1681), [1799](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1799), nor does it condemn scientific studies, [609](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.609), [1878f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1878), [2057](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2057).

**II l** *To Culture*: The Church is of benefit to human culture, [609](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.609), [1740](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1740), [1799](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1799), [1878f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1878), [1936](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1936), [2205 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2205); its teachings are not hostile to the good and benefit of human society, [*1634*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1634)*,* [*1740*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1740); nor does it impede the free progress of science, [1679](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1679), [*1712 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1712) (not even through the scholastic method, [1680](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1680), [*1713*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1713)); it ought not be reconciled with liberalism and politics, [*1780*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1780); it is not an obstacle to true freedom, [1873](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1873), [1876f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1876), [1932](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1932), [1936](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1936); it can in disciplinary matters accommodate itself to the various conditions of the times, [1931](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1931), [1968](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1968), without however omitting or weakening any sections of doctrine, [1800](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1800), [1967](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1967), [*2065*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2065).

# THE ROMAN PONTIFF

## SAINT PETER, PRINCE OF THE APOSTLES

**III a** Christ promised and gave to blessed Peter the primacy of jurisdiction over the universal Church, [163](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.163), [466](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.466), [570c](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.570c), [1821 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1821); hence Peter is the prince of the Apostles, [351](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.351), [466](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.466), [*496*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.496), [570c](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.570c), [655](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.655), [694](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.694), [1823f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1823), and greater than St. Paul, [*1091*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1091)*,* [*2147a*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2147a); he is the Vicar of Christ, [*496*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.496), [673](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.673), the foundation of the Church, [351](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.351), [1821](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1821), [1824](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1824), [1976](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1976), [2145](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2145), and head, [*633*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.633), and visible principle of unity, [247](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.247), [1821](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1821), [1960 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1960); “from whom the episcopacy and all authority have emerged” [100](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.100). Peter was aware of his own primacy, [*2055*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2055).

Peter has successors, [468 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.468), [570d](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.570d), [766](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.766), and these are perpetual by divine right, [1824 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1824); which succession is found in the episcopacy of the City of Rome, [570a ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.570a), [1824](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1824), [C[[56]](#footnote-57)218](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_218).

Three seats of St. Peter are shown, [163](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.163). He himself founded the Roman Church, [1824](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1824), and together with Paul was given over by Nero to be killed, [163](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.163).

## THE ROMAN PONTIFF SUCCESSOR TO ST. PETER

### The Primacy of Jurisdiction

**III b** The Existence of Primacy: The Roman Pontiff holds (and always has held) primacy in the universal Church, [41](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.41), [57a ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.57a), [87](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.87), [100](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.100), [100\*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.100*), [109f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.109), [112](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.112), [149](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.149), [149\*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.149*), [161\*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.161*), [163](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.163), [230](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.230), [247](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.247), [298](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.298), [326](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.326), [332](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.332), [341](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.341), [350f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.350), [357](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.357), [436](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.436), [466](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.466), [468](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.468), [*484*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.484), [570d](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.570d), [*589*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.589), [674](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.674), [694](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.694), [740](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.740), [*765 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.765), [999f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.999), [*1319f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1319)*,* [*1322 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1322), [1473](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1473), [1500](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1500), [1734](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1734), [*1826 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1826), [1831ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1831), [1960f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1960), [*2055 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2055), [2147a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2147a), [5000 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.5000); this primacy is supreme and full, [466](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.466), [694](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.694), [C[[57]](#footnote-58)218](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_218); was not introduced through the Church, [332](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.332), [*1503*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1503), nor by the Emperor (Roman) [*635*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.635), but was instituted immediately by Christ, [*765 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.765), who in the person of Peter made the Roman Bishop the head of the entire Church, [570c ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.570c), [694](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.694), [*765 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.765), [999](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.999), [1500](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1500), [1824ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1824), that alone, [468 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.468), [*653*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.653)*,* [*1091*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1091), not only ministerial, [*1503*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1503), but so that by divine right he may have supreme power, [466](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.466), [694](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.694), [1500](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1500), [1825f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1825), [1831](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1831), [C[[58]](#footnote-59)109](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_109), [C[[59]](#footnote-60)219](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_219), and that ordinary and immediate over all and each, [1831](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1831), and immutable privileges, [332](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.332), provided he is duly elected, [*652*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.652), [674](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.674), although perchance he be evil, [*588*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.588)*,* [*638f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.638)*,* [*646*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.646)*,* [*650*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.650), or not predestined, [*637*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.637)*,* [*646*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.646)*,* [*648*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.648).

The Roman Pontiff is Peter’s successor, [57b](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.57b), [57e](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.57e), [87](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.87), [109](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.109), [112](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.112), [466](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.466), [570d](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.570d), [*639*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.639), [674](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.674), [694](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.694), [740a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.740a), [999](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.999), [1473](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1473), [1677](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1677), [1824ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1824), [1832ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1832), [5000f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.5000), [C[[60]](#footnote-61)218 sec. 1](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_218), and the Vicar of Christ, [*617*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.617), [694](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.694), [740a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.740a), [*765*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.765), [999](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.999), [1473](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1473), [1500](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1500), [1826](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1826).

**III c** The extent of the primacy: The Roman Pontiff has authority over Councils, [446](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.446), [717](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.717), [740](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.740), [*768*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.768)*,* [*1319*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1319)*,* [*1323f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1323)*,* [*1506ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1506)*,* [*1574*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1574)*,* [*1598 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1598), C[[61]](#footnote-62)2332; he has jurisdiction over bishops, [57a ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.57a), [149](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.149), [570h](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.570h), [1500](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1500), [*1506 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1506), [1823](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1823), [1961](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1961); for which reason he is the ordinary superior of dioceses, [1500](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1500), [C[[62]](#footnote-63)218 sec. 2](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_218), and of all churches, [466](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.466); which however is not injurious to the jurisdiction of bishops but strengthens it, [466](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.466), [1828](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1828), [1962](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1962); he has a certain power over princes and nations, [*1322*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1322)*,* [*1754*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1754), [C[[63]](#footnote-64)1557](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1557); and in general everyone baptized is subject to him as far as sacred things are concerned, [468 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.468), [570a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.570a), [*1734*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1734), [1827](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1827), [1831](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1831), [C[[64]](#footnote-65)87](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_87); and whoever refuses to be subject to the Roman Pontiff or refuses to communicate with members of the Church subject to him is a schismatic, [570a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.570a), [C[[65]](#footnote-66)1325 sec. 2](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1325).

**III d** The functions of primacy: The Roman Pontiff nourishes, rules and governs the whole Church, [109 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.109), [468f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.468), [694](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.694), [1500](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1500), [1608f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1608), [1826](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1826), [1831](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1831), [1961](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1961), [C[[66]](#footnote-67)218](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_218); and particularly the Roman, [*636 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.636); he alone establishes canons, [*570k*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.570k); he himself gives out legitimate decretals, [*618 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.618); has the full power over spiritual things, [*1323 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1323); hence he disposes of the treasury of the Church (see, [XII l](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?pos=IDX.2.13.3%3AXIIL)), concedes indulgences (see, [XII l](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?pos=IDX.2.13.3%3AXIIL)), calls transfers, dissolves councils, [740](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.740), [C[[67]](#footnote-68)222, sec. 2](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_222,_$C2$A72); makes bishops, [968](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.968), [1750f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1750), [C[[68]](#footnote-69)329, sec. 2](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_329); transfers, judges, and punishes them, [570h](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.570h), [570p](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.570p); dispenses in the laws of the Church, [*491 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.491)*,* [*731*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.731), [C[[69]](#footnote-70)81](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_81); is the supreme judge, [57a ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.57a), [330](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.330), [352](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.352), [469](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.469), [570f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.570), [*731*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.731)*,* [*1440*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1440), [1830](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1830), [C[[70]](#footnote-71)1569](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1569), from whom no appeal is granted, [330 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.330), [333](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.333), [341](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.341), [353](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.353), [469](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.469), [570g](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.570g), [717](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.717), [1830](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1830), [5001](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.5001), C[[71]](#footnote-72)1880, who can be judged by no one, [330](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.330), [333](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.333), [353](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.353), [570g](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.570g), [1830f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1830), [C[[72]](#footnote-73)1556](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1556); he can establish reserved cases, [903](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.903), [C[[73]](#footnote-74)893](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_893), and these for the whole Church, [*1545*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1545), [C[[74]](#footnote-75)895](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_895), C[[75]](#footnote-76)2245; sometimes he excommunicates without the presumed consent of the entire Church, [*1440*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1440).

**III e** Consequences: The Roman Pontiff is the father and teacher of all Christians, [694](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.694); head of the whole Church, [694](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.694); is the root of the unity of the Church, [1686](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1686), [1960](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1960), [1976](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1976); hence to be subject to him is “necessary for salvation” [469](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.469), [570b](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.570b), [570](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.570), [5000](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.5000), and “where the Pope is there is the Church” [1500](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1500), [1686](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1686); national churches separated from him are a contradiction, [1738](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1738); obedience should be shown him in respect to the laws of the Church, [999](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.999), [1698f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1698), C[[76]](#footnote-77)2231; he is not subordinate to the Emperor (Roman) [*497*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.497), [570i](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.570i); he acts freely in the universal Church, [*1734*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1734): for which reason even if the ruler is unwilling he can carry on business with the bishops and all the faithful, [*1749*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1749), [1829](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1829), C[[77]](#footnote-78)2333; to whom his court is always open, [446](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.446), [1830](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1830), [C[[78]](#footnote-79)1569](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1569); his letters are valid and can be promulgated even without the permission of the civil ruler (or “regal approval”) [*1728*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1728), [1829](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1829), [1847](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1847); even without his acknowledgement they are valid, [1729](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1729). He ought not to adapt himself to modern liberalism, [1780](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1780). He is rightly called “Most Holy” [*649*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.649).

### The Infallibility of the Roman Pontiff

**III f** The Roman Pontiff can establish articles of faith and laws of morals and of good works, [*767*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.767), and in establishing these (and in determining the sense of the words of any book of a theologian, [1098 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1098)) he is infallible, [100](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.100), [100\*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.100*), [109](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.109), [110](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.110), [129](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.129), [139](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.139), [142](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.142), [160](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.160), [171f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.171), [351](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.351), [570q](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.570q), [1000](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1000), [*1319*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1319), when he speaks excathedra, [1838 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1838), [C[[79]](#footnote-80)1323 sec. 2](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1323,_2$C2$B0); hence he is the supreme Teacher of the Church, [694](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.694), [1832ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1832), [C[[80]](#footnote-81)218](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_218); whose final decision is irretractable, [109](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.109), [110](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.110), [159](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.159), [1830](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1830), [1880](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1880), even before the consent of the Church (teaching) [*1325*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1325), [1839](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1839), or a universal council, [*768*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.768), [1839](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1839), [C[[81]](#footnote-82)1332 sec. 2](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1332).

The Roman Pontiff has never erred in matters of faith or morals, [171 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.171), [273](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.273), [*1723*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1723), [1836](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1836) (not even Liberius, [93](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.93)); for this reason he is rightly called the protagonist of the faith, [129](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.129), whose office is to define and defend the truths of faith, [466](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.466), [570q](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.570q), [1836](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1836), which is never done to the detriment of science, [1679](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1679), [*1712*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1712). Assent and obedience are due to his decrees, even if they do not pertain to the dogmas of faith and morals, [1698](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1698).

### The Civil Rule of the Roman Pontiff

**III g** The spiritual kingdom of the Roman Pontiff is compatible with temporal rule, [*613*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.613)*,* [*1775*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1775); abrogation of this rule is not to the benefit of the Church, [*1776*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1776); for this reason he is not to be deprived of all dominion and temporal responsibility, [*1727*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1727).

### Election and Person

**III h** The Roman Pontiff according to law is elected by the Cardinals, [*620*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.620), [C[[82]](#footnote-83)160](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_160); rightly elected he is the true Pastor of the Church, [674](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.674), [C[[83]](#footnote-84)219](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_219), and its head, [1500](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1500), although perchance he be not predestined or evil: see, [III b](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?pos=IDX.2.3.2.1%3AIIIB).

### The Roman See

**III i** The Roman See is the See of Saint Peter, [57b](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.57b), [57e](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.57e), [163](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.163), [298](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.298), [351](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.351), [694](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.694), [1824](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1824), which (if the Pope is unwilling) cannot be transferred, [*1735*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1735); for this reason the Church of the City of Rome is the mistress and vindicator of truth, [1679](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1679), mother and (as such immune from error, [740b](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.740b)) mistress of all the faithful, [433](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.433), [436](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.436), [460](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.460), [*617*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.617)*,* [*2056*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2056), and of all churches, [859](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.859), [910](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.910), [946](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.946), [999f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.999), to which it is superior, [163](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.163), [*621*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.621), over which it holds a primacy of power, [436](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.436), and it is their head, [57e](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.57e),—and this not from merely political conditions, but from the ordination of divine providence, [1827](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1827), [*2056*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2056).

# ONE GOD

## HIS EXISTENCE AND KNOWABILITY

**IV a** God exists, [1 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1), [6f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.6), [9ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.9), [13](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.13), [15](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.15), [17](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.17), [19](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.19), [39](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.39), [54](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.54), [86](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.86), [428](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.428), [703](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.703), [994](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.994), [1782](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1782), [1801](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1801); which can be known with certainty by the light of reason, [1622](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1622), [1650](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1650), [1670ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1670), [1785](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1785), [1806](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1806), [2072](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2072), [2106f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2106), [2145](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2145), and also demonstrated, [1670](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1670), [2145](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2145), even without grace, [*1391*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1391)*,* [*3017*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3017), [3020](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3020); moreover, God has revealed Himself, [429](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.429), [1785 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1785); hence His existence also can and ought to be believed, [1782](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1782); but the immediate vision of God is not natural to the soul, [*475*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.475); much less is it (vision) essential or congenital to it, or identical with the light of the intellect itself, [*1659*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1659)*,* [*1662f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1662)*,* [*1927*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1927); nor is God immediately manifest in things, [*1891 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1891); “God is” and “God is not” do not mean the same thing, [555](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.555).

## THE ESSENCE AND ATTRIBUTES OF GOD

**IV b** God is only one, [1 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1), [6f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.6), [9ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.9), [13](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.13), [15](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.15), [17](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.17), [19](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.19), [39](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.39), [54](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.54), [86](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.86), [420f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.420), [462](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.462), [703](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.703), [994](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.994), [1782](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1782), [1801](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1801); distinct from the world, [433](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.433), [*507*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.507)*,* [*523*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.523)*,* [*1660f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1660)*,* [*1664*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1664)*,* [*1701*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1701), [1782](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1782), [1803f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1803), [*1891 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1891), [2108](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2108), [*2189*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2189), [3005](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3005); He did not begin at the same time as the world, [501](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.501); He is high above all, [1782](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1782).

In God various attributes are distinguished: He is simple, [389](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.389), [428](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.428), [993](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.993), [1782](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1782), and immutable, [254](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.254), [346](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.346), [428](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.428), [463](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.463), [703](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.703), [*1701*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1701), [1782](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1782), [1804](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1804), uncreated, [39](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.39), eternal, [39](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.39), [254](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.254), [346](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.346), [428](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.428), [463](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.463), [703](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.703), [1782](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1782) (and He alone, [391](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.391)), immense, [39](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.39), [428](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.428), [1782](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1782), incomprehensible, [254](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.254), [428](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.428), [1782](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1782), ineffable, [428](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.428), [1782](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1782), a spiritual substance, [1782](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1782), happy in and of Himself, [1782](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1782); there is, however, no real distinction between the nature and the attributes, nor among themselves, [294](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.294), [389](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.389), [993](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.993); and on this account ought all distinction in God to be rejected, [*523 f*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.523).

## THE RELATIONS OF GOD TO THINGS OUTSIDE HIMSELF

**IV c** God is infinitely intelligent, [1782](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1782), knowing all things, [300](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.300), [316](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.316), [321f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.321), [1784](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1784), even free things in the future, [321](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.321), [1784](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1784), [3017](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3017), the past, present, and future by a knowledge of vision, [*2184*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2184), and willing in an infinitely perfect way, [1782](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1782), omnipotent, [1 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1), [39](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.39), [*210*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.210), [316](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.316), [346](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.346), [*374*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.374), [428](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.428), [461ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.461), [703](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.703), [1782](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1782), with a free will in operating outside Himself, [*374*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.374), [706](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.706), [1655](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1655), [1783](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1783), [1805](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1805); ought not to obey the devil, [586](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.586), was able to do what He did not, [374](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.374).

There does not exist a twofold principle of the world, good and evil, [19 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.19), [29](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.29), [54](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.54), [86](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.86), [237](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.237), [343](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.343), [421](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.421), [461](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.461), [469](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.469), [706f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.706), [994](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.994), [1783](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1783), [1801](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1801); God is the source of all truth and power, [1649](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1649); He is also one and the same in the Old and New Testament, [28](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.28), [348](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.348), [421](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.421), [464](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.464), [706](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.706).

# THE TRIUNE GOD

## UNITY OF NATURE

**V a** In God there are three Persons, who nevertheless are one God, [1 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1), [13](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.13), [15](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.15), [17](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.17), [19](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.19), [22ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.22), [39](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.39), [42a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.42a), [48](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.48), [51](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.51), [54](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.54), [58ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.58), [82f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.82), [201](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.201), [213](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.213), [231](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.231), [254](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.254), [275](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.275), [278ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.278), [294](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.294), [296](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.296), [343](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.343), [346](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.346), [389f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.389), [420f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.420), [428](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.428), [431f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.431), [461](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.461), [691](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.691), [703f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.703), [993](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.993), [994](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.994), [1595f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1595), [*1915*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1915); they are, namely, one nature, one essence or co-essential, one substance, or consubstantial, [19](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.19), [59](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.59), [66](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.66), [74](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.74), [83](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.83), [86](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.86), [213](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.213), [254](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.254), [275](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.275), [277ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.277), [343](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.343), [420](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.420), [428](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.428), [431f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.431), [461](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.461), [703f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.703), [708](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.708), [993 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.993); they are coequal, coeternal, coomnipotent, [13](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.13), [19](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.19), [39](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.39), [54](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.54), [68](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.68), [70](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.70), [75](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.75), [78f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.78), [254](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.254), [276ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.276), [343](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.343), [*368*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.368), [428](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.428), [461ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.461), [703f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.703), [708](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.708); equally omnipresent, adorable, omniscient, immense, vivifying, [39](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.39), [75](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.75), [79f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.79), [254](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.254), [703 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.703); inseparable in being, [48](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.48), [281](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.281), [461](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.461), in acting (creating) [19](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.19), [77](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.77), [79](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.79), [281](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.281), [284](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.284), [428](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.428), [461](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.461); one principle of operation outside, [77](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.77), [254](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.254), [281](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.281), [284](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.284), [421](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.421), [428](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.428), [703](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.703), especially in effecting the Incarnation, [284](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.284), [429](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.429).

## THE TRINITY OF PERSONS

**V b** The Father is a simple and indivisible substance, [432](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.432); is not made, not created, nor born, nor proceeding 3, [19](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.19), [39](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.39), [275](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.275), [345f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.345), nor by generating does He lose anything of His substance, [432](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.432); but He has everything of Himself; He is the principle without principle, [428](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.428), [703 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.703); He is omnipotent, [1 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1), [6](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.6), [9](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.9), [13](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.13), [15](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.15), wise and benign, [*381*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.381), invisible, incapable of suffering, immortal, incomprehensible, immutable 3; with the Son He is the cause (according to the Greeks) or (according to the Latins) the principle of the Holy Spirit, [691](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.691); He is the creator of heaven and earth 3, [6](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.6), of things visible and invisible, [9](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.9), [13](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.13), [54](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.54), [86](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.86), [994](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.994).

**V c** The Son is God, [2 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2), [13](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.13), [16ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.16), [39](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.39), [49ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.49), [54](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.54), [57\*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.57*), [61](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.61), [68ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.68), [77ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.77), [86](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.86), [148](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.148), [233](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.233), [276](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.276), [461f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.461), [705](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.705), [708](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.708), [993 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.993); consubstantial (ὁμούσιος) with the Father, [13](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.13), [54](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.54), [86](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.86), [276](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.276), [462](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.462), [708](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.708); He is not a kind of extension of the Father, [66](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.66), nor a portion of Him, [276](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.276); He is not created, [13](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.13), [39](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.39), [48](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.48), [61](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.61), [86](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.86); but He is a principle from a principle, [704](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.704), born of the nature or substance of the Father, [13](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.13), [19f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.19), [48](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.48), [54](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.54), [69](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.69), [86](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.86), [275f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.275), [281](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.281), [344ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.344), [432](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.432), [462](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.462), [703f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.703), [708](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.708), [994](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.994), and only the Father, [40](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.40), [428](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.428), [703 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.703); and that from eternity, [214](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.214); neither by will nor necessity, [276](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.276); He is His natural, not adopted Son, [276](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.276); He is immutable, [14](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.14), incapable of suffering, [72](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.72), [344](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.344), [429](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.429), [344](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.344), sempiternal, [276](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.276).

The Son is not the matter from which God created, [*1909*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1909), but through Him all things are made, [54](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.54), [77](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.77), [86](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.86); He rules all, [422](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.422); as the Son He is not predestined, [285](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.285); He alone is incarnate, [282](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.282), [285](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.285), [422](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.422), and suffered, [42a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.42a); He is not better called “Word” than “Son” [1597](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1597). [On the Incarnate Word see, [VIII a ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?pos=IDX.2.8.1%3AVIIIA)]

**V d** The Holy Spirit is true God, [2 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2), [13ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.13), [39](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.39), [51](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.51), [54](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.54), [58ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.58), [74](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.74), [275ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.275), [296](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.296), [344](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.344), [429](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.429), [344](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.344), [461](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.461), [463](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.463), [1084](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1084), [1461](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1461), neither born, nor created, [39](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.39), [277](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.277), proceeding from the Father and the Son, [15](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.15), [19](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.19), [83](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.83), [277](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.277), [345f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.345), [369](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.369), [428](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.428), [460](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.460), [463](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.463), [574a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.574a), [691](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.691), [703](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.703), [994](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.994), [1084](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1084), [*2147a*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2147a), as from one principle, [460](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.460), [691](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.691), [704](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.704); He is immutable, [14](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.14); He is not made, [14](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.14), [76](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.76); but all things are made through Him, [77](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.77); He is to be adored as the Father and the Son, [80](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.80), [86](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.86); He is sent by the Father and the Son, [277](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.277); He is not the Father of Christ, [282](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.282), nor the soul of the world, [*370*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.370); He is the inspirer of the Law and the Prophets, [86](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.86), [344](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.344), [429](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.429), [344](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.344), of both Testaments, [13](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.13), [345f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.345), [706f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.706), [783](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.783), [1787](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1787); He is the cause of the Incarnation, [290](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.290), [344](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.344), [429](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.429); He is the vivifier, [86](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.86); He dwells in the Church, [302](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.302); He is sent to the apostles and the faithful and works in them, [13](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.13); He teaches a universal council, [930](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.930); He acts in the sacraments, [424](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.424); He is received with sanctifying grace, [799](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.799); He is sevenfold, [83](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.83); He gives seven gifts, [83](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.83); He is given in a special way in confirmation, [697](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.697), and ordination, [964](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.964).

## VARIOUS EXPLANATIONS AND MANNER OF SPEAKING

**V e** These three Persons are among themselves really distinct, [39](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.39), [231](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.231), [281](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.281), [*523 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.523), [703 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.703); but each is whole in the others (circumincession) [704](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.704); in them there is nothing before or after, [39](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.39); the Deity is not diminished in each, it is not increased in the Three, [279](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.279).

There are in God relations numerically distinct, [280](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.280), [703](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.703), and properties, [281](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.281), [296](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.296), [428](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.428).

The Persons together with the essence do not constitute a quaternity, [431 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.431); nor because of the Incarnation is a quaternity made, [283](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.283).

Reality, idealness, and morality are not persons, [*1916*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1916).

God is not to be called threefold, but triune, [278](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.278); not “one God distinct in three Persons,” but “in three distinct Persons” [1596](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1596), [1655](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1655).

A real distinction is not to be established between the nature and the Persons (subsistences) [389](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.389), [431](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.431); some distinction, however, is to be made, [*523 f*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.523).

The formulas; “Will generates will,” “Wisdom generates wisdom” are to be rightly understood, [294](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.294), [296](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.296).

This revealed truth is a mystery, [1655](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1655), [*1915*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1915), falsely explained by Ant. Guenther, [1655](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1655).

# GOD THE CREATOR

## CREATION

**VI a** The triune God, [48](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.48), [79](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.79), [281](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.281), [421](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.421), created the world from nothing, [1 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1), [19](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.19), [21](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.21), [29](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.29), [54](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.54), [86](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.86), [235](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.235), [343](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.343), [421](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.421), [428](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.428), [461](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.461), [706](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.706), [994](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.994), [1782f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1782), [1801](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1801), [1805](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1805), when He willed, [*374*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.374)*,* [*706*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.706), not from eternity, [391](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.391), [*501 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.501)*,* [*3017*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3017), but from the beginning of time, [428](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.428), [1783](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1783), [2123](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2123); not of necessity, [*501*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.501)*,* [*503*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.503), but freely from His goodness, [*374*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.374)*,* [*607*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.607), [706](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.706), [1655](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1655), [1783](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1783), [1805](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1805), [1908](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1908), [3017](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3017); nevertheless God is not the only cause of true effects, [559 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.559), nor did He create the best world, [*569*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.569), nor another world, so that Adam was not the first man, [*717c*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.717c).

Creation is falsely explained by the Origenists, [203 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.203), Priscillianus and the Manicheans, [*237 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.237), Ekard, [501 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.501), the ontologists, [*1664 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1664), Rosmini, [*1905 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1905), the pantheists, [*1701*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1701), [1803f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1803), the emanatianists, [34](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.34), [232](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.232), [1665](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1665), [1804](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1804).

### Creatures

**VI b** Creatures of two kinds are to be distinguished (distinct from God, [*1701*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1701), [1782](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1782), [1803](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1803)): visible and invisible, bodily and spiritual, [9](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.9), [13](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.13), [19](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.19), [54](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.54), [86](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.86), [343](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.343), [421](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.421), [428](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.428), [461](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.461), [706](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.706), [994](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.994), [1783](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1783), [1802](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1802), [1804f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1804), [*3018*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3018); created nature, even material, is of itself good, [37](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.37), [236f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.236), [242](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.242), [421](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.421), [425](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.425), [706](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.706), [713](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.713); it is changeable, [706](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.706); it is not the same as the Word, [*1909*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1909); nor is it purely nothing, [*526*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.526)*,* [*1901 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1901), nor are all things one, [522](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.522).

Heaven, the stars, and water are not animate, [*208*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.208); nor is flesh-food of itself unclean, [*244*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.244).

**VI c** Angels exist and are spiritual, [428](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.428), [461](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.461), [706](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.706), [994](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.994), [1783](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1783), [1802](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1802), [1804f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1804), [3018](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3018), they are not propagated, [533](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.533); the devil himself was created and good, [237](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.237); likewise also the other demons, [428](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.428), [574a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.574a).

**VI d** Man is not of the substance of God, [1701](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1701), but is created, [241 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.241), [1783](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1783), [1801](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1801), [1806](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1806), [2123](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2123); he consists of two substances, [295](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.295), namely of a soul or spirit and a body (not made by the devil, [242](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.242)) or flesh, [295](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.295), [428](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.428), [481](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.481), [1783](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1783), [1914](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1914); he is therefore flesh intellectually animated, [255](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.255). The end of man is so that leading a life in society and ordered under God he may cultivate fully all his faculties for the praise of His Creator, and by fulfilling faithfully the office of his art or any other vocation he may obtain for himself both temporal and eternal happiness, [2270](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2270).

*Adam* was the first man, [101](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.101), [228a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.228a), [2123](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2123), from whom the whole human race is derived, [2280](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2280), [3028](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3028); nor before him were there any men in the world, [717c](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.717c). On the origin of the body of Adam: [2123](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2123), [2285](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2285), [3027](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3027).

*The human soul* is not a part of the divine substance or one reality with the Word, [20](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.20), [31](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.31), [235](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.235), [348](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.348), [*511 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.511); nor is it uncreated or uncreatable, [527](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.527); but it is created by God, [20](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.20), [144\*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.144*), [170](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.170), [527](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.527), [3027](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3027), from nothing, [348](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.348); it does not pre-exist, [203](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.203), [236](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.236); it is not generated by parents, [170](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.170), [*533*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.533)*,* [*1910*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1910); nor does it evolve from sensitive to intellectual, [*1910 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1910); it is a substance, [295](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.295); it is not one in all, [738](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.738); but one in each, [338](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.338); infused before birth, [*1185*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1185); it is not naturally either good or evil, [236](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.236), [243](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.243), [642](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.642).

The soul is rational and intellectual, [148](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.148), [216](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.216), [255](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.255), [290](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.290), [338](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.338), [344](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.344), [393](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.393), [422](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.422), [429](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.429), [480](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.480), [738](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.738); but it is not itself the unique object of evident knowledge, [*557*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.557); it is immortal, [2 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2), [16](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.16), [40](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.40), [86](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.86), [738](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.738); it is not united with the body accidentally, [*1911*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1911)[*1914*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1914), but *per se* and essentially it is truly the form of the body, [480 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.480), [738](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.738), [1655](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1655); it is endowed with liberty, [129 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.129), [133ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.133), [140](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.140), [174](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.174), [181](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.181), [186](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.186), [316f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.316), [322](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.322), [325](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.325), [348](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.348), [*373*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.373)*,* [*776*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.776), [793](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.793), [797](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.797), [*1027*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1027)[*1039*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1039)*,* [*1065ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1065)*,* [*1093ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1093)*,* [*1291*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1291)*,* [*1360f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1360)*,* [*1912*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1912)*,* [*1914*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1914), which liberty can be proved not only from Scripture, [1041](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1041), but also from reason, [1650](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1650).

[On the separated soul see, [XIV a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?pos=IDX.2.14.1%3AXIVA) and, [b](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?pos=IDX.2.14.2%3AXIVB)]

**VI e** Man by his nature is a social being, [1856](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1856), [2270](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2270); wherefore all cannot be equal, [1849](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1849), [1851](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1851); cf. Xli-p.

## THE END OF CREATION AND PROVIDENCE

**VI f** The *end*, which God had in creating, is not His own beatitude, [1783](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1783), but the manifestation of His goodness, [1783](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1783). The end of the world is the glory of God, [134](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.134), [1805](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1805), [2270](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2270), the beginning and end of all things, [1785](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1785). This end nevertheless is not obtained equally by the evil and the good work of man, [*504 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.504); it is obtained not only by complete renunciation, [508](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.508), cf. [XIa ff](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?pos=IDX.2.13.1.1%3AXIA). [XIIId](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?pos=IDX.2.13.4.4%3AXIIID).

**VI g** By His providence God governs things visible and invisible, [421](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.421), [1784](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1784), and He protects them, [254](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.254), by truly acting upon the world and men, [*1702*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1702); He does not will evil as He wills good, [514](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.514); and He only permits sin, [816](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.816); He could have prevented evil, [*375*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.375); He ought not to obey the devil, [*586*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.586); He neither communicates nor subjects His omnipotence to us, [1217 f](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1217). Man is not under the direction of the stars, [35](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.35), [239f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.239), nor is he ruled by fate, [*607*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.607).

# GOD ELEVATING

## THE SUPERNATURAL ORDER

**VII a** God elevated rational creatures (angels and men) to a state exceeding the needs of nature, [*1001–1007*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1001-1007)*,* [*1009*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1009)*,* [*1021*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1021)*,* [*1023f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1023)*,* [*1079*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1079)*,* [*1671ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1671)*,* [*3018*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3018); which is not transformation into God, [*510*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.510), or into the Only Begotten Son of God, [*511 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.511)*,* [*520 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.520), nor is it identification with the humanity of Christ, [*520 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.520), nor a manifestation of being itself in the fullness of its real form, [*1926*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1926); but it is an ordering to a supernatural end, [1786](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1786) (unapproachable to reason without revelation, [1669](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1669)), which consists in the vision and fruition of God, [530](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.530), [693](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.693); to which man ought to tend through supernatural acts, [180](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.180), [190](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.190), [198](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.198), [714](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.714), [809](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.809), [842](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.842), [*1002*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1002)*,* [*1004f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1004)*,* [*1011ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1011)*,* [*1023*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1023)*,* [*1027*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1027); for this reason a distinction is to be made between works naturally (morally) good and works meritorious of a supernatural end, [190](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.190), [*1008*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1008)*,* [*1034*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1034)*,* [*1036ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1036)*,* [*1061f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1061)*,* [*1065*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1065)*,* [*1289f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1289)*,* [*1394*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1394)*,* [*1524*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1524).

The natural is perfected by the supernatural order, [2206](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2206), [2224](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2224), [2237](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2237).

## ORIGINAL MAN

(The State of Integral Nature)

**VII b** The first man was formed without sin, [316](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.316), [793](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.793), in sanctity and justice, [788](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.788); he had free will, [133](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.133), [186](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.186), [316](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.316), [793](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.793), and supernatural gifts, [*1008*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1008)*,* [*1024*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1024), of integrity, [192](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.192), [*1026*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1026), [2123](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2123), [2212](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2212), and of immortality, [101](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.101), [175](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.175), [788](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.788), [793](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.793), [*1006*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1006)*,* [*1078*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1078)*,* [*1517*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1517), [2123](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2123), [2212](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2212).

The grace (justice) of the first man was not a consequence of creation nor due to nature itself, [1008](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1008), [*1023 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1023)*,* [*1026*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1026)*,* [*1385 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1385), but God could have created man without this supernatural grace, [*1021*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1021)*,* [*1023f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1023)*,* [*1079*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1079)*,* [*1516 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1516), even such as he is now born, [*1055*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1055).

To preserve the original state man needed grace, [192](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.192), [*1001 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1001); and his merits were not merely human and natural, [*1001 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1001)*,* [*1007*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1007)*,* [*1009*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1009)*,* [*1384*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1384).

## ORIGINAL SIN

**VII c** Man at the suggestion of the devil sinned, [428](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.428). Adam lost through (originating) sin sanctity and justice and was wholly changed for the worse in body and soul, [174](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.174), [200b](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.200b), [788](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.788), [2123](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2123), [2212](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2212), was made a “mass of perdition” [316](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.316), under the power of the devil, [788](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.788), [793](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.793).

The fall of Adam hurt not only himself, but from it his whole progeny contracted sin (original) [102](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.102), [109a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.109a), [130](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.130), [144\*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.144*), [175](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.175), [316](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.316), [348](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.348), [*376*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.376)*,* [*536*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.536), [574a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.574a), [711](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.711), [789ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.789), [793](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.793), [1643 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1643); which nevertheless does not consist in concupiscence, which in an improper sense is called sin, [792](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.792).

Original sin is passed on not by imitation but by propagation or generation from the seed of Adam, [109a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.109a), [711](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.711), [790f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.790), [795](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.795), [2229](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2229); it is true sin, [101](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.101), [174f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.174), [789ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.789), [*3018*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3018), [3028](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3028), and guilt of sin, not only of penalty, [376](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.376); it is proper to everyone, [790](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.790), [795](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.795), although not personal, [*532*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.532); it is in children themselves, [102](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.102), [410](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.410), [532](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.532), [791](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.791); equally of Christians and infidels, [*534*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.534); it is voluntary, not by the habitual will of the child, [*1048*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1048), but by reason of origin, [*1047*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1047), and it differs from actual sin by reason of consent, [410](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.410), and also by reason of penalty, which for original sin alone is the lack of the vision of God, [410](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.410), since non-baptized children are condemned indeed (with the penalty of damnation) yet they did not hate God in act, [*1049*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1049), nor did they suffer the penalty of fire (sense) [493a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.493a), [*1526*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1526).

Original sin is taken away in the baptism of regeneration, [101 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.101), [109a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.109a), [160b](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.160b), [329](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.329), [348](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.348), [790ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.790), which must be received at least in desire, [388](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.388), [413](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.413).

A man should not do penance throughout his whole life for original sin, [*1309*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1309).

The Blessed Virgin Mary did not at all contract original sin; see, [VIII k](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?pos=IDX.2.9.2%3AVIIIK).

## FALLEN MAN

(The Consequences of Original Sin. The State of Fallen Nature.)

**VII d** Man through the sin of Adam was changed for the worse, [188](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.188), [195](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.195), [200b](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.200b), [1643 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1643); he was made mortal, [101](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.101), [109a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.109a), [175](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.175), [793](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.793), and under the power of the devil, [711](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.711), [788](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.788), [793](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.793), prevented from entering heaven, [711](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.711), subject to eternal death, [734](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.734).

His intellect was obscured, [195](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.195), [788](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.788), [1616](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1616), [1627](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1627), [1634](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1634), [1643](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1643), [1670](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1670).

Freedom of will as a capacity for good (supernatural) was wholly lost, [105](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.105), [130](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.130), [133–135](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.133-135), [181](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.181), [186](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.186), [194](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.194), [317](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.317), [811](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.811), and as concerns the rest (natural things) his free will was not indeed destroyed, [*160a*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.160a)*,* [*766*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.766), [793](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.793), [797](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.797), [815](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.815), [*1065*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1065)*,* [*1298*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1298)*,* [*1388*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1388), but it was weakened, [160a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.160a), [181](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.181), [186](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.186), [199](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.199), [793](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.793); man can, however, do certain good things even without grace, [*1008*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1008)*,* [*1022*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1022)*,* [*1025*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1025)*,* [*1027ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1027)*,* [*1037f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1037)*,* [*1065*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1065)*,* [*1351ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1351)*,* [*1372*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1372)*,* [*1388ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1388)*,* [*1414*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1414), [1524](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1524); even if without a special privilege he cannot avoid all venial sins, [107 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.107), [471](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.471), [804](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.804), [833](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.833), [*1275*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1275)[*1282*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1282).

Therefore not all works of infidels or sinners are sins or splendid vices, [*1025*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1025)*,* [*1035*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1035)*,* [*1298*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1298)*,* [*1388*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1388); nor in all acts do they serve a dominant desire, [*1040*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1040)*,* [*1523 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1523); and material sins, which are from force or from invincible ignorance are not formal because of the will of Adam, [*1291 f*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1291).

There is in fallen man the inclination to sin, from which he cannot completely free himself, [792](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.792), [*1275*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1275); by which, however, he is not prevented from entering heaven, [*743*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.743), [792](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.792); for involuntary motions of concupiscence are not transgressions of the law, [*1050 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1050)*,* [*1074 ff*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1074).

God could have from the beginning created a man such as is now born, [*1055*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1055).

# GOD THE REDEEMER: CHRIST

(Incarnation; Christology)

## TRUE GOD

**VIII a** Christ is true God, [2 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2), [13](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.13), [20](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.20), [33](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.33), [39](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.39), [42a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.42a), [54](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.54), [57\*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.57*), [86](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.86), [111a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.111a), [113f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.113), [116f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.116), [143f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.143), [148](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.148), [220](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.220), [224](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.224), [255](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.255), [283](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.283), [288](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.288), [290](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.290), [344](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.344), [392](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.392), [422](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.422), [462](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.462), [480](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.480), [708](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.708), [710](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.710), [993](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.993), [994](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.994), [*2027 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2027), [2088](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2088), [5003](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.5003); hence he is rightly called the Word of the Father, [118 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.118), [224](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.224); and likewise the Son of the Father, [1597](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1597), consubstantial with Him, [13](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.13), [54](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.54), [86](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.86), [148](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.148), [220](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.220), [480](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.480), [708](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.708), [993](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.993), [1460](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1460), [5003](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.5003); equal to the Father, [118](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.118), not separated from Him, [66](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.66), not His extension or gathering, [66](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.66); God of God, [13](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.13), [54](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.54), [86](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.86), born, not made, [13](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.13), [39](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.39), [54](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.54), [61](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.61), only-begotten, [13](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.13), [54](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.54), [86](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.86), one of the Trinity, [216](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.216), [222](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.222), [255](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.255), [291](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.291), [372](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.372), [708](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.708), through whom all things are made, [54](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.54), [86](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.86), [422](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.422); He is unchangeable, [27](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.27), [54](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.54), eternal, [54](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.54), [66](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.66), incapable of suffering, [27](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.27). The divinity of Christ is proved in the Gospels, [*2027*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2027)*,* [*2030*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2030), [2096 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2096); cf. [Vc](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?pos=IDX.2.5.2%3AVC).

## TRUE MAN

**VIII b** The same Christ is true man, [13](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.13), [18](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.18), [25](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.25), [33](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.33), [40](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.40), [111a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.111a), [114](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.114), [143f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.143), [148](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.148), [220](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.220), [258](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.258), [283](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.283), [288](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.288), [290](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.290), [344](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.344), [393](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.393), [422](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.422), [429](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.429), [462](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.462), [480](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.480), [708](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.708), [1463](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1463); conceived of the Holy Spirit, [2](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2), [6](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.6), [9](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.9), [13](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.13), etc., not of man, [13](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.13), [20](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.20); truly born of a mother, [2](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2), [6](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.6), [9](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.9), [13](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.13), [257](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.257), [285](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.285), [422](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.422), [708](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.708), [993](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.993); He has a rational soul, [25](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.25), [111a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.111a), [148](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.148), [216](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.216), [255](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.255), [283](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.283), [290](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.290), [344](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.344), [422](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.422), [429](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.429), [462](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.462), [480](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.480), [709f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.709), [1463](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1463), [5003](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.5003), intellectual, [13](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.13), [216](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.216), [255](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.255), [422](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.422), [429](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.429), [480](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.480), not merely sensitive, [710](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.710), truly human, [13](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.13), [65](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.65), [*204*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.204), which however did not previously exist, [*204*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.204); and He has a body, [26](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.26), [31](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.31), [111a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.111a), [148](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.148), [290](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.290), [480](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.480), [708](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.708), [1463](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1463), [5003](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.5003), i.e., true human flesh, [20](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.20), [216](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.216), [255ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.255), [393](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.393), [422](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.422), [429](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.429), not imaginary, [20](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.20), [344](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.344), [462](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.462), [710](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.710), nor celestial, [710](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.710), joined to divinity right from the very beginning, [205](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.205); and His soul is truly, *per se* and essentially, the form of His body, [216](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.216), [480](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.480). And so Christ is in all things like us without sin, [1463](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1463).

## TWO NATURES

**VIII c** There are therefore in Christ two natures, [18](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.18), [20](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.20), [33](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.33), [42a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.42a), [111a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.111a), [143f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.143), [148](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.148), [168](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.168), [213ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.213), [283](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.283), [288](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.288), [344](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.344), [422](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.422), [429](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.429), [462](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.462), [710](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.710), [1463](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1463), [5003](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.5003), which are indeed substantially different, [260](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.260); nevertheless they are undivided, [148](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.148), [259ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.259), [1463](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1463), [5003](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.5003), inseparable, [148](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.148), [283](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.283), [288](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.288), [290](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.290), [314a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.314a), [1463](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1463), unconfused, [111a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.111a), [148](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.148), [168](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.168), [219f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.219), [259f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.259), [288](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.288), [290](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.290), [314a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.314a), [1463](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1463); for this reason He is said to be “of two natures and in two natures” [259](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.259), [462](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.462), [708](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.708).

Each nature retains its own properties, [72](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.72), [258](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.258), [262](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.262), [288](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.288), [290](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.290), [708](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.708), [1462](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1462), and faculties of knowing and willing, [263](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.263), [265ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.265), [288](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.288), [344](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.344), [1465](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1465): He has two operations, [144](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.144), [251ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.251), [264ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.264), [288f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.288), [291f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.291), [344](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.344), [710](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.710), [1465](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1465). The two wills are not contrary to each other, [251 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.251), [288ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.288), [1465](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1465); the operation θεανδρική, so-called, is to be rightly understood, [268](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.268).

## ONE PERSON

(The Hypostatic Union)

**VIII d** Christ is only one Person, [20](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.20), [42a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.42a), [143](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.143), [215ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.215), [261](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.261), [269](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.269), [283](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.283), [312](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.312), [314a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.314a), [344](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.344), [422](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.422), [429](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.429), [462](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.462), [480](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.480), [710](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.710), [876](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.876), [1462f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1462), [1655](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1655), so that God and man in Him are one and the same, [13](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.13), [111a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.111a), [215ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.215), [257](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.257), [250](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.250), [288ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.288), [312](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.312), [708](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.708), whole God-man and whole man-God, [168](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.168); He is consubstantial with God and with man, [148](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.148), [220](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.220), [257](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.257), “a third person in the Trinity” [372](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.372), but neither the Father nor the Holy Spirit, [422](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.422).

The natures are united not only through having the same name, grace, dignity, authority, operation, relation, confusion, affection, and virtue, [111a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.111a), [115](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.115), [121](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.121), [216](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.216), [708](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.708), [710](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.710), nor only through denomination or adoration, [216](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.216), nor through the conversion of one nature into the other, [40](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.40);

but they are united according to subsistence (ὑπόστασιν), which is called hypostatic union, [13](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.13), [111a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.111a), [115f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.115), [148](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.148), [216ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.216), [226](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.226), [261](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.261), [288](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.288), [292](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.292), [344](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.344), [429](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.429), [462](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.462), [480](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.480), [708](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.708), [710](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.710), [1463](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1463), which was accomplished from the first moment of the Incarnation, [111a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.111a), [*204 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.204), [234](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.234), [250](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.250). The hypostatic union (falsely explained by Ant. Guenther, [1665](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1665), and Rosmini, [*1917*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1917)) is ineffable and incomprehensible and a mystery strictly so-called, [1462](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1462), [1669](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1669).

## CONSEQUENCES AND MANNERS OF SPEAKING

**VIII e** Christ is not to be called only θεοφόρος, or godly, [117](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.117), [312](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.312), or the dwelling place of God, [123](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.123), [708](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.708), nor one composite nature, [288](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.288), nor simply “two natures” [*630*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.630).

From unity of person there follows a communication of idioms, or reciprocal predication of properties and operations, [16](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.16), [116](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.116), [121](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.121), [124](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.124), [201](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.201), [222](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.222), [224](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.224), [248](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.248), [*372*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.372), [480](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.480), [*1339*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1339); hence the “agnoeti” erred, [248](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.248).

The operations of the human nature are made more dignified by being joined with the divinity, [550](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.550), [*1019*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1019).

The humanity of Christ itself is to be adored, [120](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.120), [221](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.221); and indeed directly as united with divinity, [224](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.224), [*1561*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1561), with one adoration, not two, [120](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.120), [221](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.221); and also to be loved by the perfect, [*1255*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1255); this cult of latria is fitting especially to the Eucharistic Christ, [*478*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.478), [878](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.878), [888](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.888), [C[[84]](#footnote-85)1255 sec. 1](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1255); and to the Most Sacred Heart of Jesus, [*1563*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1563).

The Man Christ is the only Son of God, [2](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2), [64](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.64), and natural, [143](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.143), [1460](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1460), in no way adopted, [299](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.299), [309ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.309), [314a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.314a), [344](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.344), [429](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.429), [344](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.344), [462](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.462); a “servant” only allegorically through obedience, [310](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.310), [313](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.313); He is not the Son of the Holy Spirit, [282](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.282); but truly a Son of man; *see* [VIII i](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?pos=IDX.2.9.2%3AVIIII); He can be called less than the Father and Holy Spirit, greater or less than Himself, [285](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.285); He cannot be called incapable of being born, [26](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.26); rather He has two nativities, eternal as God and temporal as man, [257](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.257), [285](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.285), [290](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.290), [344](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.344), [429](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.429), [344](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.344), [1463](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1463).

**VIII f** Christ was conceived holy and without sin, born and died, [13](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.13), [18](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.18), [65](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.65), [122](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.122), [148](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.148), [224f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.224), [251](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.251), [258](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.258), [286](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.286), [290](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.290), [711](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.711), [1463](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1463); rather impeccable even before the resurrection, [224](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.224); for this reason He did not need purification, [*1314*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1314); He had the seven gifts of the Holy Spirit, [83](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.83), in particular even fear of God, [*378*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.378); He was not subject to passions nor improved by progress, [224](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.224); He did not offer sacrifice for Himself, [122](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.122); He was free in the Passion, [215](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.215), [253](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.253), [255](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.255); He performed miracles, [215](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.215), [1624](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1624), [1790](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1790), [1813](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1813), [2084](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2084), by His own power, [121](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.121), and gave forth prophecies, [1790](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1790), and His soul knew from the beginning all things in the Word, which God knows by a knowledge of vision, [2183 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2183), [2289](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2289), even the last day, [248](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.248), [*2032 ff*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2032).

In Christ three substances can indeed rightly be distinguished: the Word, the soul, the flesh, [285](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.285), [295](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.295); but He is better called a person and two substances of God and of man, [148](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.148), [312](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.312).

Christ as Word is born only, as man He is born, made, and predestined, [285](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.285); as man he is not omnipresent, [307](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.307).

# GOD THE REDEEMER: THE WORK OF CHRIST

(Redemption, Soteriology)

**VIII g** Since neither through the powers of nature nor the Mosaic law fallen man could be restored, [793](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.793), [811](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.811), but only through the merits of Christ, [711](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.711), [790](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.790), [795](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.795), [809](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.809), [820](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.820), [*1011*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1011), Christ was made man for our salvation, [9 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.9), [13](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.13), [16](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.16), [40](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.40), [54](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.54), [86](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.86), [*371*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.371), [429](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.429), [708](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.708), and died that He might repair the nature lost through Adam, [194](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.194), [794](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.794), [800](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.800), and free us from the yoke of the devil, [*371*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.371), and from original sin, [*536*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.536), [790](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.790); through the death of the Cross (which He, not the Father suffered, [42a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.42a), and which was a true sacrifice, [122](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.122), [938](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.938), [940](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.940), [2195](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2195)), He redeemed us from sin and reconciled us to the Father, [286](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.286), [993f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.993), [2212](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2212), and that out of love for the human race, not from fate, [*717d*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.717d); He satisfied (by His Passion) for all men or for the sins of the whole world, [122 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.122), [160a f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.160a), [286](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.286), [319](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.319), [323](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.323), [344](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.344), [429](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.429), [344](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.344), [462](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.462), [80](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.80), [550](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.550), [*790*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.790)*,* [*794f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.794)*,* [*799*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.799)*,* [*809*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.809)*,* [*820*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.820)*,* [*1096*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1096)*,* [*1294ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1294)*,* [*1382*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1382)*,* [*3018*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3018), which satisfaction is infinite, [*319*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.319)*,* [*552*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.552)*,* [*1019*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1019), and superabundant, [740a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.740a). Christ in the next world will not be crucified for the demons, [*209*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.209).

Christ is the Redeemer, [328](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.328), [355](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.355), [494](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.494), [550](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.550), [794](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.794), [831](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.831), [874](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.874), [877](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.877), [907](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.907), [1100](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1100), [2195](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2195), the Savior, [1](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1), [251](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.251), [253](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.253), [269](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.269), [271](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.271), [337](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.337), [796](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.796), [809](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.809), [874](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.874), [875](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.875), [913](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.913), the Mediator of God and men, [143](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.143), [251](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.251), [253](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.253), [333](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.333), [711](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.711), [790](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.790), our Lord, [1](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1) (and frequently elsewhere), and King, [13](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.13), [333](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.333), and He is as man a king with legislative, judicial, coactive, administrative jurisdiction over both the members of His spiritual kingdom and over all men, [2194 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2194); over all civil states, [2196](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2196); He passed laws in fact as a true legislator, [831](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.831); hence laicism is to be condemned, [2197](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2197). Likewise Christ as man is a Priest, [122](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.122), [333](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.333), [430](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.430), [938](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.938), [940](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.940), [2136](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2136), [2195](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2195); He is present in the mysteries of the Church, [2297](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2297).

## THE MYSTERIES OF THE LIFE OF CHRIST

**VIII h** Christ about to come is foreshadowed through all the sacred things, sacrifices, sacraments, ceremonies of the Old Testament, [695](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.695), [711 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.711); in fact, promised even before the Law, [794](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.794), to our first parents, [2123](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2123). He is not a mythical fiction, [*1707*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1707).

Christ was made flesh and conceived of the Holy Spirit from the Virgin Mary, [2 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2), [13](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.13), [40](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.40), [63](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.63), [86](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.86), [148](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.148), [255](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.255), [422](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.422), [429](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.429), [708](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.708), [933](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.933), [944](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.944);

then He was born of the Virgin Mary, [2 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2), [122](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.122), [143f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.143), [148](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.148), [233](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.233), [282f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.282), [314a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.314a), n[[85]](#footnote-86), [344](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.344), [429](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.429), [344](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.344), [422](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.422), [709ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.709), as legitimate, [717 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.717); He was not the son of Saint Joseph, [993](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.993);

during His life He ate, drank, slept, and became tired, [422](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.422); He was hungry, thirsted, grieved, He wept, [20](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.20); He was poor but not absolutely, [*494*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.494)*,* [*577*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.577); He had a right to property, [*577*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.577) (of using things, selling them or giving them away, of acquiring other things from them, [494](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.494)); willingly He paid tribute to Caesar, [495](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.495); He always had a consciousness of His Messianic dignity, [*2035*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2035);

He suffered, [2 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2), [13](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.13), [34](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.34), [54](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.54), [86](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.86), [143f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.143), [422](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.422), [480](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.480); and that willingly, [255](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.255), [*717d*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.717d), as man, [72](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.72), [344](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.344), [429](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.429), [344](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.344), [709](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.709);

He was crucified under Pontius Pilate, [2 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2), [20](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.20), [86](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.86), [222](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.222), [255](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.255); nor can it be said that the inferior part of Christ on the Cross did not communicate to the superior part its involuntary disturbance, [*1339*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1339);

He died 3 ff., [16](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.16), [20](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.20), [42a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.42a), [286](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.286), [344](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.344), [429](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.429), [344](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.344), [422](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.422), [429](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.429), [462](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.462), [993](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.993), [1463](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1463), a pious death (according to the Gospels) [*2038*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2038); He was made sin for us, [286](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.286), and He offered sacrifice, [938 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.938), [951](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.951); from His side opened after death true water flowed, not phlegm, [416 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.416), [480](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.480); (concerning the blood that was shed the Church has defined nothing, [718](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.718));

He was buried, [2 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2), [20](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.20), [86](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.86), [255](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.255), [344](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.344), [429](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.429), [344](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.344), [462](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.462);

He descended into hell 3, [6](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.6), [40](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.40), [420](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.420), [462](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.462), in His soul (not in power only) [*385*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.385), [429](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.429); but He did not do away with hell, [*532*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.532), [574a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.574a);

He rose (on the third day) [2 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2), [13](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.13), [16](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.16), [20](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.20), [40](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.40), [54](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.54), [86](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.86), [255](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.255), [429](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.429), [462](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.462), [994](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.994), [2036](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2036), [2084](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2084), as [Psalm 15:10f.](https://ref.ly/logosref/BibleVUL.Ps15.10f), foretold, [2272](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2272), by His own power, [286](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.286), with a true resurrection of the flesh, [344](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.344), [429](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.429), [344](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.344), [422](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.422), [429](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.429), [462](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.462), [709](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.709), by a reassuming of the soul to the body, [422](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.422), [462](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.462), historically demonstrable, [*2036 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2036); and truly then, but without need, He ate, [344](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.344), [429](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.429), [344](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.344), [422](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.422);

He ascended into heaven, [2 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2), [13](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.13), [20](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.20), [54](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.54), [86](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.86), [255](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.255), with body and soul, [13](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.13), [344](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.344), [429](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.429), [344](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.344), [429](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.429), [462](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.462), [709](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.709);

He is seated at the right hand of the Father, [2 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2), [13](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.13), [16](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.16), [86](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.86), [255](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.255), [344](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.344), [429](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.429), [344](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.344), in the flesh, [73](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.73), [422](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.422), [462](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.462), [709](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.709), according to a natural manner of existing, [874](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.874);

He sent the Holy Spirit, [344](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.344);

He rules unto eternity, [9](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.9), [13](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.13), [16](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.16), [86](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.86);

He will judge the living and the dead, [2 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2), [13](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.13), [40](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.40), [54](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.54), [86](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.86), [228a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.228a), [287](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.287), [334](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.334), [422](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.422), [427](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.427), [429](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.429), [462](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.462), [994](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.994), coming in His body, [13](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.13), [73](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.73), [255](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.255), [422](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.422), [709](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.709).

## MARY THE MOTHER OF GOD AND VIRGIN

**VIII i** Mary is the Mother of Christ and hence truly and properly the mother of God, [20](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.20), [91](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.91), [111a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.111a), [113](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.113), [144](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.144), [201f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.201), [214](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.214), [218](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.218), [256f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.256), [290](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.290), [422](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.422), [708](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.708), [993](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.993), [1462](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1462), [5002](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.5002); but she generated only the Son, not the Trinity, [284](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.284).

**VIII k** Mary was an inviolate virgin, [13](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.13), [20](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.20), [91](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.91), [113](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.113), [114](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.114), [201f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.201), [214](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.214), [255f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.255), [282](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.282), [290](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.290), [344](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.344), [429](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.429), [344](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.344), [429](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.429), [462](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.462), [708](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.708), [735](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.735), [993](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.993), [1462](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1462); and remained perpetually (before birth and in birth and after birth) [91](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.91), [256](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.256), [282](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.282), [314a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.314a), n[[86]](#footnote-87), [734](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.734), [993](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.993); for this reason she did not need purification, [1314](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1314).

She was conceived immaculate, i.e., without the stain of original sin, [256](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.256), [734f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.734), [792](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.792), [*1073*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1073), [1100](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1100), [1641](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1641), [2147a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2147a), but not because of an uncorrupted seed passed on to her, [*1924*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1924); nor did she suffer or die because of original sin, [*1073*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1073).

By a special privilege she was free from all sin, even venial, [256](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.256), [833](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.833); excels all in sanctity, [1978a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1978a); performed external good works, [*1260*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1260); intercedes before God for men, [734](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.734); because of which she is worthy of praise, [*1316*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1316), and even to be loved by the perfect, [*1255 f*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1255).

She is the mediatrix of all graces, [1940a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1940a), [1978a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1978a), and in a certain way a coredemptrix with Christ, [1978a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1978a), n[[87]](#footnote-88).

She was assumed with her body into heaven, [1641](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1641), note[[88]](#footnote-89), [2291](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2291), [3031 ff](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3031).

# GOD THE SANCTIFIER: THE FRUITS OF THE REDEMPTION

## THE NOTION OF JUSTIFICATION

**IX a** Justification does not consist in the fact that sins are only covered over or not imputed, [*742*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.742), [792](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.792), [804](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.804), [*1925*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1925), nor in only, although true, remission of sins, [483](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.483), [799](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.799), [821](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.821) (which indeed is always conjoined to it, [103](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.103), [742](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.742), [792](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.792), [*1031 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1031)*,* [*1043*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1043)), nor in obedience to the commandments, [*1042*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1042), nor in the external favor of God, [821](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.821), nor in the mere external imputing of the merits of Christ, [820 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.820), nor formally in the justice of Christ Himself, [799](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.799), [820](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.820);

but it is such a condition of a man, in which in himself he is made just and a friend of God, [799](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.799), taken into a state of adoption of the sons of God, [794](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.794), [796](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.796), [*1042*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1042)*,* [*1523*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1523), [2212](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2212), and of an heir of eternal life, [799](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.799), [2229](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2229), consort of the divine nature, [*1021*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1021)*,* [*1042*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1042); it is a sanctification and internal renewal through sanctifying grace (as a “permanent principle of supernatural life” [2237](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2237)) [197](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.197), [*539*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.539), [792](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.792), [795f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.795), [799f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.799), [809](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.809), [*1069*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1069), with the infusion of faith, hope, and charity, [410](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.410), [800](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.800).

The various; causes of justification are enumerated, [799](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.799), [807](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.807).

## THE WAY OF JUSTIFICATION

**IX b** Although nothing of the things which lead to justification merit it, but all are done through grace, [176 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.176), [187](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.187), [194f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.194), [790](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.790), [797ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.797), [811](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.811), [813](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.813), [*1042*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1042), and are founded upon the merits of Christ, [103 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.103), [186](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.186), [197f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.197), [790](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.790), [794f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.794), [800](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.800), [809](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.809), [820](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.820), [993](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.993), man (an adult) nevertheless can and ought to dispose himself to justification, [797 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.797), [814](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.814), [817](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.817), [819](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.819), [823](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.823), [897](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.897), [915](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.915), [*1029*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1029)[*1418*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1418), by supernatural acts, [797 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.797), [811ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.811), [*1042*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1042), by freely assenting and cooperating with grace exciting and helping, [797](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.797), which he can cast aside, [797 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.797), [*1093*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1093)*,* [*1095*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1095); to the measure of his disposition the subsequent justification corresponds, [799](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.799).

A disposition is made by acts of faith, hope, charity and penance, [798](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.798), [813](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.813), by observing the commandments, [798](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.798), [897](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.897).

Faith is the beginning of human salvation, [801](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.801), and the necessary foundation and root of justification, [178](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.178), [200b](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.200b), [801](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.801), [1789](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1789), [1793](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1793); but it is not the first grace, [*1376 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1376), [1522](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1522).

But faith alone does not suffice, [*751 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.751), [798](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.798), [800ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.800), [819](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.819), [*822 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.822), [829f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.829), [839](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.839), [847](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.847), [851](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.851), [902](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.902), [914](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.914), nor only with prayers, [*1418*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1418), nor “confident” faith, [802](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.802), [822f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.822), [851](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.851), [922](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.922), nor faith so-called from the testimony of creatures, [200](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.200), [*1173*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1173), nor faith in one God without explicit faith of a rewarder, [*1172*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1172), [1349a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1349a), and of the Trinity and Incarnation, [1214](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1214), [1349a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1349a), [1966a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1966a). In the Creed (*see* n. [86](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.86)) as a unique and first principle all the faithful of Christ should agree, [782](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.782).

Penance consists not only in an amendment of life, [*747*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.747), nor only in confident faith, [1418](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1418), nor “confident” faith, [802](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.802), [822](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.822); but is a hatred and detestation for sin with desire for the sacrament, [798](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.798), with the purpose of a new life and an observing of the commandments, [798](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.798), [829 ff](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.829).

Contrition is always necessary for justification, [894](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.894), [897](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.897), [902](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.902); it can be twofold: one perfect with charity, and the other imperfect or attrition, [898](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.898), [915](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.915).

Attrition without charity is not evil, [*744*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.744)*,* [*746*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.746), [798](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.798), [818](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.818), [898](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.898), [915](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.915), [*1416*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1416)*,* [*1525*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1525); and it can be supernatural, [*1304*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1304)[*1525*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1525); and ought to be supernatural for justification, [*1207*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1207)*,* [*1299*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1299).

Contrition (perfect with charity) with desire of the sacrament justifies even before its (the sacrament’s) reception, [*1033*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1033), even outside the case of necessity or martyrdom, [1070 f](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1070).

## THE CONSEQUENCES OF JUSTIFICATION (BAPTISMAL)

**IX c** *See* effects of Baptism, [XIIc](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?pos=IDX.2.13.2.2%3AXIIC). No one is able with certitude of faith or ought to know that he is justified, [1418](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1418), nor “confident” faith, [802](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.802), [833 f](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.833). Concupiscence remains in the reborn, [*792*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.792)*,* [*1393*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1393). It is not enough to believe and to pray, [*1418*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1418). Even the innocent are afflicted by God, [*1420*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1420). Man to preserve himself cannot dispense himself from the observance of divine law given for his utility, [1421](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1421).

## ACTUAL GRACE

### The Nature of Grace (Actual)

**X a** Grace (actual) is a supernatural help of God, by which a man is made fit to act as he should to obtain eternal life, [103 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.103), [132ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.132), [177ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.177), [200a f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.200a), [797 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.797); it is not only an external help, [104](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.104); but through grace God “operates in us without us” [193](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.193), although all things are not done by grace alone, [*1352 ff*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1352).

Grace gives us not only the ability to act more easily, but the absolute possibility, [105](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.105), [812](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.812); it heals nature vitiated by original sin and restores the liberty (of the sons of God) [105](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.105), [130](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.130), [181](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.181), [317](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.317), [325](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.325).

### Names and Divisions

**X b** There is given a grace of illumination (in the intellect) and of inspiration (in the will) [135 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.135), [180](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.180), [797](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.797), [*1521*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1521), [1791](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1791); arousing grace (calling) and helping, [179](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.179), [200](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.200), [317](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.317), [797ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.797), [807](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.807), [813 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.813); antecedent, concomitant, and subsequent, [809](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.809), beginning and perfecting, [806](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.806), anticipating, [177](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.177), [187](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.187), [191](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.191), [196](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.196), [317](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.317), [348](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.348), [797](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.797), [813](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.813), [*1377*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1377)*,* [*1522*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1522); operating (moving) [317](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.317), [797](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.797), [813](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.813), [898](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.898), [*1036*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1036); external and internal, [*1355*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1355); elevating, [130](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.130), healing (medicinal) [317](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.317); efficacious, sufficient, merely sufficient ([1090](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1090), [1097](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1097)) [*1295 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1295)*,* [*1367 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1367), [1521](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1521).

### Necessity of Grace

**X c** Universally in the work of salvation grace is necessary, [103 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.103), [126f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.126), [130ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.130), [176ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.176), [199](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.199), [200ab](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.200a), [*376*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.376), [793ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.793), [811ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.811), [2103](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2103); not only grace of the intellect but of the will, [104](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.104), [136](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.136), [180](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.180), [797](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.797); and *absolutely* indeed (elevating grace) for operating in a way conducive to salvation, [105](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.105), [135](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.135), [178ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.178), [186](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.186), [190](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.190), [193ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.193), [198f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.198), [317](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.317), [*373*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.373), [797ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.797), [811](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.811), [*1011*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1011)*,* [*1521*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1521), [1789](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1789), [1791](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1791); not, however, to operate well naturally (the good works of infidels and sinners) [*642*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.642)*,* [*776*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.776)*,* [*1027*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1027)*,* [*1040*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1040)*,* [*1298*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1298)*,* [*1351ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1351)*,* [*1523*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1523).

In particular grace (healing) is necessary to know truth, [104](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.104), [180](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.180), [182](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.182), [195](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.195), to avoid sin, [103 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.103), [132f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.132), [136](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.136), [186ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.186), [2212](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2212), to act well, [133](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.133), [184](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.184), [190ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.190), [*376*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.376), [806](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.806), [*1011*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1011), [1054](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1054), to pray for grace, [176](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.176), [179](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.179), [*1520*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1520), to desire salvation, [139](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.139), [177](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.177), [198](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.198), [798](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.798), [*1518*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1518)*,* [*1520*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1520), for the beginning of faith, [141](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.141), [178](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.178), [199](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.199), [200b](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.200b), [797f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.797), [*1376 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1376), [2103](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2103), for perseverance, [132](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.132), [183](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.183), [192](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.192), [806](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.806), [826](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.826), [832](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.832), [1519](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1519).

### The Gratuitousness of Grace

**X d** Grace of justification is not owing to prayer, [176](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.176), nor other dispositions, [179](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.179), [1518](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1518); for a man is called with no preceding merit, [135 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.135), [176ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.176), [191](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.191), [200](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.200), [200a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.200a), [797f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.797), [801](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.801), [*1518*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1518); but with the grace received he can merit further, [803](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.803).

### The Efficacy of Grace

**X e** Grace is not the omnipotent will of God which nothing resists, [797](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.797), [814](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.814), [*1093*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1093)*,* [*1095*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1095)*,* [*1359 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1359), [1386 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1386); but man ought to cooperate freely with grace “which he can throw away” [134](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.134), [140](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.140), [*160a*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.160a), [196](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.196), [200](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.200), [317](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.317), [319](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.319), [348](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.348), [793ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.793), [814](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.814), [819](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.819), [*1093*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1093)*,* [*1095*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1095)*,* [*1224*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1224)*,* [*1359*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1359)*,* [*1375*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1375)*,* [*1381*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1381)*,* [*1419*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1419)*,* [*1521*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1521), [1791](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1791), [3005](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3005); hence God is said to cooperate with us, [182](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.182), [200](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.200).

Not all grace is efficacious, [*1367*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1367), nor is all inefficacious grace useless and harmful, [*1296*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1296).

In what the nature of efficacious grace consists, there is free controversy, [1090](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1090), [1097](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1097).

## HABITUAL GRACE (SANCTIFYING)

**X f** Habitual grace is distinct from actual grace, [*1064 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1064): it is a quality infused and inherent in the soul, by which man is formally justified, [483](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.483), [792](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.792), [795](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.795), [799f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.799), [809](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.809), [821](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.821), [898](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.898), [*1042*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1042)*,* [*1063 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1063); as regenerated, [102](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.102), [186](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.186), remains in Christ, [197](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.197), [698](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.698), puts on the new man, [792](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.792), and is made an heir of eternal life, [792](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.792), [799f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.799), is the permanent principle of supernatural life, [2237](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2237); but it is not that by which a Christian is distinguished from a non-Christian, [*1358 f*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1358).

Habitual grace is *conferred* in baptism, [130](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.130), [186](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.186), [424](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.424), [792](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.792), [796](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.796), [847](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.847), [849](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.849), both upon children and adults, [102](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.102), [482](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.482), [894](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.894), even those not predestined, [827](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.827);

*It can be increased* especially through the reception of the sacraments, [695](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.695), [698](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.698), [849](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.849), and by good works, [803](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.803), [824](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.824), [842](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.842), [*1044*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1044), not however after death, [*788*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.788);

*It is lost* not only by the sin of infidelity, [808](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.808), [837](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.837), but by any mortal sin, [324](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.324), [805ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.805), [808](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.808), [833](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.833), [837](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.837), [862](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.862), [1393](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1393);

*It can be regained* (but only through the grace of God, [192](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.192)) even in one who is baptized and falls, [*160a*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.160a), [167](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.167), [807](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.807), and it *is regained* by the sacrament of penance or its desire, see, [XII i](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?pos=IDX.2.13.2.7%3AXIII); sometimes by extreme unction, see, [XII m](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?pos=IDX.2.13.3.1%3AXIIM); not however by the pouring out of the blood of animals, [574a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.574a).

## THE DISTRIBUTION OF GRACES

(Predestination, Reprobation)

**X g** God from eternity knew with certainty and immutably foreordained all future things, [300](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.300), [316](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.316), [321f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.321), [348](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.348), [1784](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1784); not however in such a way that all things happen from absolute necessity, [*160a*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.160a), [321](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.321), [*607*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.607);

but man remains free to do good with grace or to choose evil having rejected grace, [134](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.134), [400](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.400), [*317 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.317), [797f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.797), [1791](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1791); cf. [Xe](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?pos=IDX.2.10.4.5%3AXE).

“God wills that all men be saved” [318](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.318), [794f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.794), [*1380*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1380); and Christ died for all, see, [VIII g](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?pos=IDX.2.9%3AVIIIG) [*1096*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1096), not only for the predestined, [*1096*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1096)*,* [*1382*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1382), not for only the faithful, [1294](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1294); although not all receive the benefit of redemption, [319](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.319), [322f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.322), [*717b*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.717b)*,* [*795*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.795)*,* [*1362*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1362)*,* [*1380*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1380) [Cf. [VIIIh](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?pos=IDX.2.9.1%3AVIIIH).].

God positively predestines all good works, [196](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.196), [300](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.300), [316ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.316), [322](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.322), [348](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.348), [816](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.816), and the glory of those to be saved, [316](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.316), [322](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.322), so that nevertheless “in the election of those to be saved the mercy of God precedes good merit” [322](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.322), but He has predestined no one to evil, [*160a*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.160a), [200](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.200), [300](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.300), [316ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.316), [321f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.321), [514](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.514), [816](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.816), [827](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.827); and as no one is saved unwillingly, [*1362 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1362), [1380](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1380), likewise, whoever is to be lost “is condemned because of the merit of his own iniquity” [200](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.200), [316](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.316), [318](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.318), [321](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.321); God foreknew however and predestined the punishments of the impious, [300](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.300), [316](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.316), in such a way however that “in the condemnation of those who are to be lost the evil deserving it precedes the just judgment of God” [322](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.322).

**X h** God “does not abandon the justified, unless He is first abandoned by them” [804](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.804), [806](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.806), [1648](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1648), [1677](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1677), [1794](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1794); but rightly gives grace to penitents, nor permits us to be tempted more than we can sustain, [980](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.980); hence the commandments of God are impossible to no one, [200](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.200), [804](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.804), [828](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.828), [*1092*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1092)*,* [*1519*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1519); the grace of conversion is offered to sinners, [807](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.807); and God does not deny grace even to the foreknown (i.e., non-predestined) [319](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.319), [827](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.827); they can be Christians and members of the Church, [*627 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.627)*,* [*1422*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1422); while on the other hand predestined persons can be outside it, [*628*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.628)*,* [*631*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.631). Even those living in this world and possessing personal property can be saved, [427](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.427), [430](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.430).

It is false that frequent confession and communion in one living in a worldly way is a mark of predestination, [*1206*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1206); or that the prayer of the foreknown person is of no value, [*606*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.606); or that outside of the Church no grace is given, [*1295*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1295)*,* [*1379*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1379)*,* [*1646*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1646); or that the first grace is faith, [*1376*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1376)[*1522*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1522), or remission of sins, [*1378*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1378)*,* [*1521*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1521), consequently as if no grace were given one who is not justified, [*1043 f*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1043).

Without a special revelation no one can be certain that he himself is either of the number of the predestined, [805 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.805), [825](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.825), or after sin that he will turn himself back, [805](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.805), or that he enjoys perseverance, [183](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.183), [806](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.806), [826](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.826), which is “the great gift” [826](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.826), [832](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.832).

The Catholic doctrine concerning justification is the only true one, [809](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.809); it is not derogatory to the glory of God or the merits of Christ, [843](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.843).

## THE ECONOMY OF SALVATION

**X i** In the state of the Law of Nature sufficient grace was not lacking to men, [*160a*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.160a)*,* [*1295*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1295)*,* [*1356 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1356); nor however could they desire grace with their own powers, [1518](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1518); some were saved through hope of the coming of Christ and by His blood, [160b](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.160b).

“The Law” or the Old Testament was good and a work of the one God, [28](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.28), [348](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.348), [421](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.421), [464](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.464), [706](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.706); it had not only fear, [*1413 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1413), but even grace, [*1356*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1356)[*1519 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1519); nevertheless the law of itself did not justify, [189](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.189), [194](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.194), [793](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.793); men were justified under law by the blood of Christ, [160b](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.160b) and in the hope of His coming, [160b](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.160b).

After the promulgation of the New Testament the “Legal Precepts” of the Old Testament became deadly, [712](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.712); the observance of the commandments however belongs even to the New Testament, [804](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.804), [828ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.828), [837](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.837), [863](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.863); for Christ was not only a Redeemer but a Legislator, [831](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.831). One fulfilling His Law from fear alone is not under the Law as a Jew, [*1413*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1413). The New Law will not cease with the coming of another law, [717i](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.717i).

# GOD THE SANCTIFIER: THE APPLICATION OF THE FRUIT

## THE VIRTUES AND PRECEPTS

### The Virtues and Laws Viewed in General

**XI a** In justification at the same time as sanctifying grace there are infused the habits of virtues, [410](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.410), [483](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.483), [800](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.800), [821](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.821), more probably even in the baptism of children, [410](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.410), [483](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.483); the theological and moral virtues are distinguished, [410](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.410).

The acts of theological virtues fall under divine precept, [*1101*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1101)*,* [*1155f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1155)*,* [*1166f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1166)*,* [*1215*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1215)*,* [*1289*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1289); active virtues are necessary in the spiritual life, [*1221 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1221), and they are fitting even for the perfect, [*476*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.476); the passive virtues are not to be preferred to the active, [1972](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1972).

There exists a twofold divine law, natural and positive, [1851](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1851), [1939](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1939).

There exists a natural right and a natural law, [1756](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1756), [1936a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1936a), [1938c](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1938c) [d](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1938d), [1939](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1939), [2279](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2279), to which human laws are to be conformed, [1756f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1756), and the law of nations, [2281](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2281).

Even human laws should take their binding force from God, [1756](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1756), [1851](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1851).

Right does not consist in a material fact, [*1759*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1759)*,* [*1761*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1761).

Custom can obtain the force of law, [*1132*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1132), but in the Church it receives it from the superior hierarchical power, [*1507*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1507), [C[[89]](#footnote-90)25](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_25).

A people accepting a law promulgated by a prince without any cause sins, [*1128*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1128).

A man for his own preservation cannot *dispense* himself from that law which God established for his benefit, [*1421*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1421).

The Pope can dispense in the laws of the universal Church, [*731*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.731).

One does not always act prudently by following a weak probable opinion, [*1153*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1153); but it is licit to follow the most probable among probable opinions, [*1293*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1293), and it is licit to attack that opinion which allows one to follow a less probable rather than a more probable opinion, [1219](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1219).

In the administration of the sacraments it is not licit, having left aside a more probable opinion, to follow a less probable one, [*1151*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1151). Any opinion should not be considered probable by the fact that it is contained in a book of someone younger or more modern, [*1127*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1127).

Regulars cannot use in the forum of conscience their privileges expressly revoked by the Council of Trent, [*1136*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1136).

### Faith

(Concerning faith as it is an acceptance of revelation and of the preambles of faith, see: [I c](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?pos=IDX.2.1.3%3AIC) [d](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?pos=IDX.2.1.4%3AID), as it is the foundation of justification: [IX b.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?pos=IDX.2.10.2%3AIXB))

**XI b** Faith is a theological virtue, [530](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.530), supernatural, [178](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.178), [1789](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1789), [1795](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1795), which is infused in justification, [800 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.800), more probably even in the baptism of children, [410](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.410), [483](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.483); it is not to be attributed to merits, [200](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.200), but is to be attributed to internal grace, [178](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.178), [200a f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.200a), [442](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.442), [1626](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1626), [1791](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1791), [1814](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1814);

Hermes, [1620](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1620) and the modernists, [2074 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2074), erred concerning the *nature* of faith.

Faith is not a certain religious sense, [2074 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2074), but an intellectual assent, [420](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.420), [798](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.798), [1789](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1789), [1791](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1791), [1814](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1814), [2145](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2145), the supernatural principle of knowledge, [1789](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1789), [1795](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1795), [1814](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1814), but an act produced by a creature, not merely infused by God, [*1242*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1242), distinct from natural science, [1656](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1656), [1811](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1811); even if it does not perceive truths from intrinsic reasons, [442](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.442), [1789](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1789); it is not, however, for this reason a blind assent, [1625](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1625), [1637](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1637), [1790f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1790), [1812](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1812), or contrary to reason, [1797 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1797), [*1915*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1915); but it is above reason, [1649](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1649), [1671ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1671), [1796 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1796); not necessarily is it produced by arguments of reason, [1814](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1814); and hence it is at the same time an act of the will commanding, [420](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.420), [1789](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1789), by which a man offers free submission to God, [1791](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1791), [1814](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1814), who can even command faith, [1810](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1810).

It is, then, a certain assent, infallible, unchangeable by reason of its motive, which is not the convergence of probabilities, [2025](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2025), nor the private experience of anyone, [*2081*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2081), but it is the authority of God revealing, [723](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.723), [1637ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1637), [1656](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1656), [1789f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1789), [1794](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1794), [1800](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1800), [1811f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1811), [1815](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1815), [1968](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1968), [*2025*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2025)*,* [*2081*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2081), [2145](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2145); it is with the help of grace above all firm, by reason of its adherence, [428](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.428), [460](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.460), [468](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.468), [706ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.706), [1637](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1637), [1794](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1794), [1815](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1815), which the will commands, [*1169*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1169).

Faith which is called confident is not true and justifying faith, [1418](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1418), nor “confident” faith, [802](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.802), [822f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.822), [851](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.851), [922](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.922), [*1383*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1383).

Although faith is absolutely necessary for salvation (see, [IX b](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?pos=IDX.2.10.2%3AIXB)), yet it is not necessary for every naturally good work, [*1022*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1022)*,* [*1025*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1025)*,* [*1301*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1301)*,* [*1398*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1398); nor is purely negative infidelity a sin, [*1068*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1068).

The act of faith falls under a special precept, [*1166*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1166), and should be elicited several times in life, [*1101*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1101)*,* [*1167*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1167)*,* [*1215*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1215); the hiding of faith can be sinful, [1168](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1168), [C[[90]](#footnote-91)1325 sec. 1](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1325).

By divine and Catholic faith those things are to be believed which are revealed by God (in writing or tradition) and proposed by the Church defining or teaching ordinarily, [1792](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1792). Religious assent is required in doctrines proposed but not yet defined (for example, in the decisions of the Roman Congregations) [1684](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1684), [1880](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1880), [*2007 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2007), [2113](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2113); and in dogmatic facts, [1350](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1350), [1513 f](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1513). Necessarily the articles concerning the existence and justice of God, the Trinity, and the Incarnation are to be believed explicitly, [*1172*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1172)*,* [*1214*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1214), [1349a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1349a) [b](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1349b), [1966a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1966a).

He especially sins against faith, whether a heretic, i.e., one baptized, who retaining the name Christian pertinaciously doubts or denies any of the truths to be believed by divine and Catholic faith, or an apostate, i.e., one baptized and falling away from the Christian faith totally [C[[91]](#footnote-92)1325 sec. 2](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1325). Heretics are to be denounced, [*1105*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1105), and societies harmful to the faith are to be avoided, [*1859 ff*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1859). Books prohibited “until expurgated” cannot be retained before they are expurgated, [*1145*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1145).

To burn heretics cannot be said to be against the will of the Spirit, [*773*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.773), and to fight the Turks is not repugnant to God, [*774*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.774).

Faith is not lost by any sort of sin, [808](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.808), [838](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.838), [*1302*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1302), but only by infidelity, [808](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.808), [*1302*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1302); hence it can exist without charity, [*1302*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1302)*,* [*1401f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1401)*,* [*1791*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1791), and without hope, [1407](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1407); and thus indeed it is dead, [800](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.800), [838](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.838), [*1401 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1401), but a gift of God, [1791](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1791). In the next life faith will be done away with, [530](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.530).

### Hope

**XI c** The habit of hope is infused at justification, [800 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.800), more probably even in the baptism of children, [410](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.410), [483](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.483); it can exist without charity, [*1407*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1407); and in the next life it will be done away with, [530](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.530).

The act of hope should be elicited at times during life, [*1101*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1101).

The act from a motive of hope is good, [804](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.804), [841](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.841), [*1300*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1300)*,* [*1303*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1303), even for the perfect, [*1232*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1232)*,* [*1234*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1234)*,* [*1327f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1327)*,* [*1331ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1331)*,* [*1337*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1337).

### Charity

### Charity toward God

**XI d** The habit of charity is infused at justification, [800 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.800), more probably already in the baptism of children, [410](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.410), [483](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.483); it is never present without grace, [198](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.198); charity is to be distinguished from the natural love of God, [1034](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1034), [1036](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1036).

Perfect charity destroys sin, [*1031 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1031)*,* [*1070*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1070); it does not exclude fear and hope, [*1327 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1327); it is not the only motive for a good act, [*508*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.508)*,* [*1349*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1349)*,* [*1394–1408*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1394-1408); it is not necessary for obedience to the law, [*1016*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1016), nor for attrition, [1146](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1146), nor the most pure (act) for communion, [*1313*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1313); when it is not present not all works are sins, [*1297*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1297)*,* [*1394ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1394)*,* [*1523 f*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1523).

God is to be loved more than one’s neighbor, [*525*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.525).

Imperfect charity is not dishonorable, [*744*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.744).

The act of charity is produced by a creature; it is not merely infused by God, [*1242*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1242); it should be elicited not only once in a lifetime, [*1155*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1155), or only in case of necessity, [*1157*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1157), but several times in a lifetime, [*1156*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1156)*,* [*1289*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1289), and that by divine right, [*1101*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1101).

### Charity toward one’s neighbor

Man is bound to love his neighbor not only through external acts, [*1161*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1161), but also by an internal and formal act, [*1160*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1160).

Thus it is not permitted to be sad over the life of another or rejoice in his death, to seek this with an inefficacious longing and desire it because of some temporal advantage, [*1163*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1163), nor to desire the death of one’s father because of an inheritance which will accrue, [*1164*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1164), nor to rejoice in parricide of a parent brought about by himself in drunkenness, because of an inheritance, [*1165*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1165).

The rich are urged by a most grave precept to give alms to the poor from their superfluity, [1852](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1852), [1938b](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1938b), [2257](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2257).

It is false to say that scarcely any can be found in the world, who have anything superfluous to their state, and hence are bound to give alms, [*1162*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1162).

Those giving the mendicant Friars alms are not by that fact excommunicated, [*600*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.600)*,* [*614*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.614); it is not licit for the state to take away from citizens and the Church the faculty by which they can openly ask for alms for the sake of Christian charity, [1693](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1693).

The souls in purgatory are helped by alms, [427](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.427), [464](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.464), [693](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.693).

Lest anyone scandalize others by his own defects, care should be taken even when the will to scandalize is not present, [*1230*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1230).

Mortally sinful cooperation is realized in a servant who by submitting his shoulders helps his master to ascend through windows to ravish a virgin, or by cooperating in something similar, even if he does this through fear of a notable loss, for example lest he be expelled from the house, [1201](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1201).

### The First Precept of the Decalogue

**XI e** Religion is falsely explained by the modernists, [2074 ff](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2074). Religion can exist where there is no charity (as a motive) [*1408*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1408). God ought to be worshiped even by external and public acts, [120](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.120), [221](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.221), [302](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.302), [478](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.478), [941](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.941), [950](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.950), [*1254*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1254)*,* [*1573*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1573), even by those striving for perfection, [*1254*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1254) (for example, by prayer, [*472*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.472)); in particular adoration is due to the humanity of Christ, [120](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.120), [221](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.221), [224](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.224), [*1255*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1255)*,* [*1561*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1561); likewise to the Most Holy Eucharist, [878](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.878), [888](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.888), [C[[92]](#footnote-93)1255, sec. 1](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1255), even by the perfect and contemplatives, [*478*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.478); and the same is true of the Most Sacred Heart of Jesus, [*1562 f*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1562).

The true notion of the Liturgy is explained, [2298](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2298); likewise its necessity for the ascetical life, [2299](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2299).

The worship (and invocation) of the Saints is laudable, [342](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.342), [941](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.941), [952](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.952), [984](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.984), [998](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.998), [C[[93]](#footnote-94)1276](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1276), which should be offered even by the perfect, [*1255 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1255); praise is especially due to the Blessed Virgin Mary, [*1255*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1255)[*1316*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1316), [C[[94]](#footnote-95)1276](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1276); John the Baptist sent by God is holy and just and filled with the Holy Spirit in the womb of his mother, [421](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.421). The Church does not pray for the saints, [535](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.535).

Likewise the veneration of images is licit, [250\*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.250*), [302ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.302), [306](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.306), [337](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.337), [679](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.679), [985ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.985), [998](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.998), [1466](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1466), [C[[95]](#footnote-96)1276](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1276); also of God the Father and the Trinity, [*1315*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1315)*,* [*1569*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1569), and the veneration of relics, [303](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.303), [342](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.342), [440](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.440), [679](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.679), [985](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.985), [998](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.998), [C[[96]](#footnote-97)1276](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1276); in either case however it is only relative, [302](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.302), [337](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.337), [985f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.985), [C[[97]](#footnote-98)1255 sec. 2](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1255); the special cult shown to some images is not to be maligned, [*1570 ff*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1570). Nor does anyone act badly in seeking a devout feeling on solemn days and in sacred places, [*1253*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1253).

The rite of the Church in the solemn administration of the sacraments should not be contemned, omitted, or changed, [665](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.665), [856](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.856), [931](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.931), [996](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.996), [C[[98]](#footnote-99)773](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_773); the same holds tree concerning the canon and ceremonies of the Mass, [942 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.942), [953f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.953), [C[[99]](#footnote-100)818](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_818); concerning the customary mixing of water with the wine, [698](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.698), [945](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.945), [C[[100]](#footnote-101)814](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_814); concerning blessings, the chant, and offices, [424](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.424), [426](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.426), [*1463*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1463)*,* [*1587*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1587); concerning baptismal water and exorcisms. [665](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.665), [C[[101]](#footnote-102)757](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_757); concerning the prayers added to the absolution, [896](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.896), [C[[102]](#footnote-103)885](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_885); concerning the blessing of matrimony, [981](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.981), [C[[103]](#footnote-104)1101](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1101); concerning the anointing in conferring orders, [965](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.965); likewise the multiplication and ornamentation of altars are to be held in respect, [*1531 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1531); concerning the magnificence of worship and the institution of feasts, [*1533*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1533)*,* [*1573 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1573); concerning the application and certain number of prayers, [*599*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.599)*,* [*1564*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1564); concerning ecclesiastical burial (the cremation of dead bodies being reprobated) [1863 f](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1863).

To take away or to invade ecclesiastical property is a sacrilege, [685 f](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.685).

Simony is illicit (concerning orders, ecclesiastical gifts, the sacraments, blessings, relics, etc.) [354](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.354), [359](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.359), [364](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.364), [400](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.400), [440](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.440), [*1122*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1122)*,* [*1195 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1195), [C[[104]](#footnote-105)727](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_727); prayers offered for benefactors is not necessarily simoniacal, [*605*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.605); but it is simony to give food for a spiritual thing, [*364*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.364), or a price for reception into a monastery, [400](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.400), or the temporal for the spiritual precisely as the motive for conferring or effecting the spiritual or as a gratuitous compensation for the spiritual—or the reverse—[*1195*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1195); or if the temporal is the principal motive for giving the spiritual or its end, [*1196*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1196).

It is also against justice not to confer ecclesiastical benefices gratuitously, [*1122*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1122).

No custom exempts from simony, [364](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.364).

To assist at certain spiritualistic demonstrations is illicit, [2182](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2182); mesmerism is to be employed cautiously, [1653 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1653); theosophy attacks Catholic doctrine, [2189](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2189).

**XI f** Prayer is either private or (in the divine office said by a priest in the name of the Church) public, [2276](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2276); it is good, [*509*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.509); not however that of quietism (Molinos) [*1221–1288*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1221-1288); it is not the same as resignation, [*1245*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1245); nor is it an absolute quiet of soul, [*1241*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1241); it does not exclude reasoning, [*1240*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1240); it is helped by images, [*1238*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1238); it is hindered by impious thoughts that are permitted, [*1244*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1244), likewise by sleep, [*1245*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1245). One seeking sensible devotion in this does not thereby do wrong, [*1247*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1247), [1](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1) [249 f](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.249).

Prayer presupposes grace, [176](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.176); it is necessary, [183](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.183), [804](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.804), [979](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.979). even for the perfect, [*472*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.472); it benefits especially those to whom it is applied, [*599*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.599), even the souls detained in purgatory, [464](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.464), [535](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.535), [693](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.693), [983](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.983), [988](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.988); it is fitting even for the perfect, [*1234*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1234)*,* [*1254*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1254), as is also the act of thanksgiving, [*1235*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1235); in a sinner it is not a new sin, [*1409*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1409); the prayer of the foreknown is not useless, [*606*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.606); the petition of anything is not injurious to God, [*507*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.507)*,* [*1234*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1234). In liturgical prayers the use of the vernacular language is not to be introduced, [946](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.946), [*1566*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1566).

### The Second Precept of the Decalogue

**XI g** A vow is a good and supernatural act, [184](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.184), and it does not derogate from the promise made to God in baptism, [865](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.865); nor is it an impediment to perfection, [*1223*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1223).

An oath, which is made with truth and judgment and justice, is licit, [425](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.425), [*487*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.487)*,* [*662*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.662)*,* [*1451*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1451), even when made to confirm human contracts or civil business, [623](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.623), especially at the command of a judge concerning speaking the truth, [663](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.663), or from some other cause, as for purification of infamy, [663](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.663),—in ecclesiastical court, in investitures and in the sacred ordinations of bishops, [*1575*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1575).

Perjury knowingly committed for any cause, even if for the sake of one’s life, or even in favor of the faith, is a mortal sin, [644](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.644), [*1174*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1174); perjury is committed even by swearing with a purely mental restriction, [*1176*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1176), although the hiding of truth is considered expedient and zealous, [*1177*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1177), or although any otherwise hidden crime might have to be made manifest, [1178](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1178).

A fictitious oath is not licit for any cause, whether the matter be light or grave, [*1175*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1175).

### The Third Precept of the Decalogue

**XI h** The precept of observing feasts obliges under mortal sin, [*1202*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1202). New feasts are not instituted from neglect of old feasts and by false notions of the nature and end of feasts, [1573](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1573). It is not licit to observe Saturday, [712](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.712).

The slate cannot permit servile works on certain days, [1693](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1693).

One hearing two parts (of Mass) by different celebrants at the same time does not satisfy the precept of the Church concerning hearing Mass, [*1203*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1203).

The soul does not act badly by arousing itself to sensible devotion by a particular effort on certain solemn days, [*1253*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1253).

A bishop by his own right cannot transfer feasts of the universal Church, [*1574*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1574).

### The Fourth Precept of the Decalogue

**XI i** Authority is not the mere sum of numbers and of material powers, [*1760*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1760), but a right given by God, [1849](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1849), [1851](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1851), as a principle of order, [2207](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2207).

Obedience is not always to be offered in externals only, [*1285*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1285), but can be shown even without charity, [*1016*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1016), and shown to human laws also even by the perfect, [*473*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.473).

**XI k** The family does not receive its reason for existence from civil law, [1694](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1694), but from the natural law, [2203](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2203), [2207](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2207),

especially with regard to the power of parents over children, [1694](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1694), [1938a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1938a), [2207](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2207).

The family is an imperfect society, [2203](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2203), [2209](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2209), in which the man is the head, the woman the heart, [2233](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2233).

Spouses owe one another fidelity, [2231](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2231), and love in affection and effect, [2232](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2232), preserving the rights and dignity of the person, [2233](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2233), [2248](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2248).

The economic emancipation of women, physiological, is to be rejected completely; the social (civil) is to be admitted only very cautiously, [2247 f](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2247).

Parents are to be loved by their children, [*1164 f*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1164). But the children are free to choose marriage or virginity, [2226](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2226).

**XI l** In the Church a man through baptism is constituted a person with all the rights and duties of Christians, unless, so far as the rights are concerned, an impeding obstacle stands in the way of the bond of ecclesiastical communion, or a censure imposed by the Church [C[[105]](#footnote-106)87](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_87), [1936a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1936a); cf. [XIIc](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?pos=IDX.2.13.2.2%3AXIIC).

A member of the Church has the right to receive from a cleric spiritual goods [C[[106]](#footnote-107)682](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_682), especially the helps necessary for salvation [C[[107]](#footnote-108)682](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_682), such as participation in the sacrifice of the Mass [C[[108]](#footnote-109)1248](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1248), reception of the sacraments cf. [C[[109]](#footnote-110)785](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_785), [C[[110]](#footnote-111)853](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_853), [C[[111]](#footnote-112)886](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_886), [C[[112]](#footnote-113)892](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_892), [C[[113]](#footnote-114)939](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_939), instruction in Christian doctrine [C[[114]](#footnote-115)1331 ff](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1331).

**XI m** Obligations: The love of piety toward the Church is greater than toward the fatherland, [1881](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1881), [1936b](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1936b).

Subjection to the jurisdiction of the Church, even on the part of kings and princes, [469](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.469), [*1322*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1322), [1688](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1688), [*1754*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1754), and recognition of the Church and its authority not only in private but also in public life, [1885](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1885);

observance of the universal law of Christ, [200](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.200), [411](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.411), [829f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.829), [863](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.863), [1881](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1881), and of the precepts of the Church, [200](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.200), [411](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.411), [830](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.830), [864](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.864), [1881](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1881) (even on the part of those baptized in infancy, [869 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.869)), according to the expressed authority of Sacred Scripture, [*641*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.641); reception of instruction in religion, [2138](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2138), [2142](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2142);

reception of the sacraments, [2137 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2137); cf. [XII c ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?pos=IDX.2.13.2.2%3AXIIC);

support of the clergy according to the precept of the Lord, [427](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.427), [*598*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.598);

apostolate (lay) [1819](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1819), [1881f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1881), [1884](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1884), [1888](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1888), [1936c](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1936c), [1974](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1974), especially on the part of editors of magazines, [1887](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1887).

**XI n** *The law of ecclesiastical fast* binds under pain of grave sin, [1123](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1123);

it is broken by frequently eating a little bit, if a notable quantity is reached, [1129](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1129).

All officials doing physical work in the state are not absolutely excused, [1130](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1130), or those making an unnecessary journey of one day by horseback, [1131](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1131).

In the selection of foods custom can create an obligation, [*1132*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1132), cf. [C[[115]](#footnote-116)1251 sec. 1](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1251).

A bishop of his own right cannot transfer the day of fast of the universal Church, [*1574*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1574).

There is to be no fast on the Nativity of our Lord, nor on Sunday, [234](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.234).

*Feast days*: see, [XI h](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?pos=IDX.2.13.1.7%3AXIH).

**XI o** The State is a perfect society, [1869](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1869), [2203](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2203), with its own laws recognized by the Church, [161\*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.161*), [469](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.469), [1841f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1841), [1851](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1851), [1858](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1858), [1866](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1866); its end is the common good of this earthly life, [1841](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1841), [2203](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2203), [2208f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2208), in human things (not divine) [1866](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1866), so that, nevertheless, it should promote the true religion, [1615](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1615), [1688ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1688), [*1757*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1757)*,* [*1777 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1777), [2197](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2197) (without however forcing anyone who is unwilling to join the Catholic faith, [1875](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1875)), and to repress the unregulated liberty of feeling and the sense of propagandizing publicly, [1868](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1868), [1876](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1876), [1932](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1932) (preserving the admission of a moderate freedom for just causes, [1932](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1932)). Likewise it cannot proclaim freedom of worship as the natural law, [*1777 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1777), [1874](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1874), [1932](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1932) (although freedom of worship can be patiently borne in customs and practice, where either the necessity of obtaining a greater good or of preventing an evil demands it, [1874](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1874)).

Licitly, justice being preserved, one can free himself from external dominion, [1876](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1876), [1936](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1936).

The principle of “non-intervention” is reprobated, [*1762*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1762).

Political rule as such is required by natural law, [1855 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1855), [1866](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1866), [1868](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1868); its form can be diverse, [1855](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1855), [1871f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1871), [1886](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1886), [1934](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1934), [2221](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2221), and once taken up can be changed again, [1933](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1933).

But sedition and rebellion are illicit, [*1763*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1763), [1850](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1850), [1868](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1868), [1878](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1878), [2278](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2278); for the authority of the government in itself is given immediately by God, [1856 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1856), [1868](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1868), [1934](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1934) (it does not arise from a contract, [1856](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1856)), and is even in a sinner, [*595*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.595)*,* [*597*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.597)*,* [*656*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.656).

The right order of the state demands that, individualism rejected and the struggle “of the classes” excluded, “orders” be maintained, [2267](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2267), so that matters of minor moment and concern be relegated to inferior groups, [2266](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2266), and it involve itself in only a subsidiary way, [2266](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2266), so that when necessity demands it may define the use of property, [1938c](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1938c), [2256](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2256), and always serve and guard social justice, [2277](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2277).

[The relation between Church and state, see, [II i](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?pos=IDX.2.2.4%3AIII)].

The obligations of the state and the rights of citizens: The state ought to preserve and guard the natural rights of the family, [1877](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1877), [1938a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1938a), [2277](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2277),

and of private persons, [1877](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1877), [1938a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1938a), [2277](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2277) (even of fetuses, [2244](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2244) and of infants, [2209](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2209)), for example with regard to the right of entering matrimony, [2245](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2245), [2252](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2252),

and of “orders” [2266](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2266), and of the Church, [1719ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1719), [2208ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2208), [2278](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2278).

Let it not involve itself without necessity in the intimate affairs of citizens, [1877](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1877), [1938a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1938a), or of cities, [1877](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1877), or of “orders” [2266 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2266), or of families, [1877](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1877) (it cannot circumscribe the begetting of children, [2226](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2226));

let it recognize the rights of citizens to live according to the precepts of reason and of conscience, [2278](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2278), of private property, [2256](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2256), of inheritance, [2256](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2256), of coalition, [1938d](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1938d), [2268](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2268), not however of societies secretly conspiring against the rights of the state, [1860](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1860).

The obligations of citizens and the rights of the state: The state (if it is the fatherland, to be loved, [1936a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1936a)) is also to be guarded by the citizens, [1936a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1936a) by the giving even of one’s life, [1936a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1936a); but for the love of the fatherland it is not lawful to violate oaths or commit crimes, [*1764*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1764), nor to violate the laws of the Church, [1936b](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1936b), on the other hand it is licit to resist the abuse of power according to the circumstances, [1936b](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1936b), [2278](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2278).

Just taxes are to be paid, [1938c](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1938c), [2256](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2256). Just laws are to be fulfilled, [*1763*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1763), [1841](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1841), [1876](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1876).

Each one should work according to his capacity for the public good of the municipality, [1882](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1882), and of the state by accepting public office, [1883 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1883), [1935](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1935), editors of magazines by their writing, [1887](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1887).

**XI p** Education, is entirely ordered to the last end, accordingly it should be Christian, [2202](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2202), [2212](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2212), [2224](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2224).

The office of educating belongs to the Church, the family, and the state, [2203 ff](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2203).

It belongs to the Church as the supreme teacher and supernatural mother, [1695](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1695), [1745ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1745), [2204](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2204), [2217](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2217), who ought to oversee the whole of education, [2205](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2205), [2220](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2220).

Hence neither clergy is to be kept from gathering youths into institutions or educating, [1695](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1695), [2222](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2222).

The right and office of the family to educate is from God, [2207](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2207), [2216](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2216), [2230](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2230), of protecting children, [2223](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2223), of sending them to truly Catholic schools (not mixed or neutral) [2219 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2219), [C[[116]](#footnote-117)1374](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1374), with Catholic teachers, especially religious, [2222](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2222).

The state has the office of educating in a subsidiary way, [2208](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2208), by safeguarding by laws the right of the family and children, [2209 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2209), and by observing the right of the Church, [2209 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2209), by promoting education and scholarship, [2210](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2210), by commanding and taking care of instruction in civil and national laws, [2210](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2210) or civic education, [2211](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2211).

“Sexual” education is reprobated, [2214](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2214), [2251](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2251), likewise education that is merely natural, [2213](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2213), and coeducation, [2215](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2215).

### The Fifth Precept of the Decalogue

**XI q** Man is bound to preserve his own life, [1938c](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1938c), [C[[117]](#footnote-118)1240](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1240).

Hence he should not rashly throw it away, [1939](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1939).

A public magistrate has no direct power over the members (of the body) of those subject to him, [2246](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2246), private persons have no other than that which pertains to the natural ends of the bodily members, [2246](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2246); hence he cannot destroy or mutilate them except if otherwise he cannot provide for the good of the whole body, [2246](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2246); nor is it permitted the state to deprive citizens of the generative power, [2245 f](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2245).

To wound or to kill a man for a private reason (*per se*) is not lawful, [1939](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1939), [2354](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+2354); but for a public reason it is lawful to kill or wound a man, [1939](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1939) if it is done as punishment for a crime, [425](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.425), [2245 f](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2245).

The killing of an unjust aggressor is lawful, [1939](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1939), not however of a calumniator, [*1117*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1117)*,* [*1180*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1180), or a false witness or an unjust judge, [*1118*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1118), or of an adulterous spouse, [*1119*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1119), or of one running away after striking a blow, [*1180*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1180), or on stealing a gold piece, [*1181*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1181), or impeding the hope of possessing, [1182](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1182), of an inheritance, or legacy, or office, or an allowance, [*1183*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1183).

The direct killing of the innocent is (intrinsically) evil, [1890](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1890), [2243](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2243), C[[118]](#footnote-119)2354. Tyrannicide is illicit, [690](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.690).

Abortion is illicit (even before the animation of the fetus, [*1184 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1184)) [1890a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1890a), [2242ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2242), C[[119]](#footnote-120)2350 sec. 1; likewise craniotomy, [1889 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1889), even of an ectopic fetus, [1890b f](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1890b).

A duel is illicit, [*1102*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1102), [1491ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1491), [1939f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1939), C[[120]](#footnote-121)2351, and likewise with the assistance of a doctor or a confessor, [1862](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1862), C[[121]](#footnote-122)2351 sec. 1.

### The Sixth Precept of the Decalogue

**XI r** 1. Outside and within matrimony: Temptations of the flesh ale to be resisted (even in the midst of prayer) [1261 ff](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1261).

The kiss of a woman as not always a mortal sin, [*477*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.477).

Pollution (prohibited by the law of nature, [*717g*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.717g)*,* [*1199*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1199)), sodomy, and bestiality are sins of the lowest different species, [*1124*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1124). Masturbation to care for health is illicit, [2201](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2201).

Intercourse (illicit) is a grave sin specifically different from an imperfect act, [*1125*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1125).

A concubine is to be put out, even if it seems difficult, [*1141*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1141).

Artificial insemination is to be avoided, [3303](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3303).

2. Outside of matrimony: voluptuousness and a carnal act are sins, [*477*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.477), and this is against the natural law, [*717g*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.717g), [2231](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2231), not admitting of lightness of matter, [*1140*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1140), [5005](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.5005).

Fornication is a mortal sin, [43](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.43), [453](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.453), and that by the law of nature, [*1198*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1198).

3. Within marriage: the function of marriage is not by its own nature a sin, [241](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.241), [547](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.547), [2230](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2230); moreover it is due the one who seeks it, [2231](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2231), [2248](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2248); but exercised for voluptuousness alone it does not lack venial sin, [*1159*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1159).

Intercourse with a married woman, even with the consent of the husband is adultery, [*1200*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1200)*,* [*2231*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2231), C[[122]](#footnote-123)2357 sec. 2.

Onanism is intrinsically gravely sinful, [2239 ff](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2239).

Because of adultery the separation of spouses is licit, [702](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.702), [C[[123]](#footnote-124)1129](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1129).

The union of blood relatives is prohibited by divine law, [362](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.362).

### The Seventh Precept of the Decalogue

**XI s** The right of property is natural, [1851](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1851), [1938a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1938a) [b](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1938b) [c](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1938c), [2256](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2256), necessary for the common good, [1851](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1851), [2254](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2254), and for the good of the family, [1851](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1851), [1938a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1938a), [2254](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2254), and for the individual good, [1851](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1851), [1938a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1938a), joined to the most grave precept of charity of giving superfluities to the poor, [1852](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1852), [1938b](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1938b), [2257](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2257).

A distinction is to be made between dominion and use, [1938a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1938a), [2255](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2255), that (dominion) is not lost by abuse, [2255](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2255), this (use) can be determined by laws for the necessary good of the community, [1938c](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1938c), [2256](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2256).

Property is acquired by inheritance, [1938a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1938a), [2256](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2256), by occupation of a thing belonging to no one, [2258](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2258), by prescription (presupposing continuing good faith) [439](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.439), [C[[124]](#footnote-125)1512](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1512), by industry, [2258](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2258), not only by work, [2260](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2260).

Labor can be allocated justly, [1938b](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1938b), [2261](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2261); its just reward according to the individual and social nature of the work should be adequate for the sustenance of the worker and his family, [1038c](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+1038), [2263](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2263), and to his official status, [2264](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2264), and the necessity of the common good, [2264](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2264).

Dominion is injured *by theft* [1851](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1851), for to take a thing belonging to another against the will of the owner is a mortal sin, [*717h*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.717h), [1851](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1851), nor is it licit in grave necessity, [*1186*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1186). Occult compensation is held as illicit, if domestic servants pilfer secretly from their masters, if they judge their work to be greater than the salary which they receive, [*1187*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1187).

But in extreme need to take another’s things is just, [1938b](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1938b).

A contract of sale can be illicit, [394](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.394), as fictitious and real exchange, [1081 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1081), exchange of money, [403](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.403), [448](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.448), [716](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.716), [739](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.739), [*1142*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1142), [1191f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1191), [1475ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1475), although it can become licit, [1609 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1609), [1611 f](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1611). A contract which is called usurious is illicit, [*1190*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1190).

Agreements entered upon according to the law of nations are to be preserved, [2281 f](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2281).

It is a matter of social justice “to exact from each all that is necessary for the common good” [2277](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2277), and hence it governs the allocation of the fruits from capital and labor, [2260](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2260), [2265](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2265), and offers the opportunity to work, [2265](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2265), and to receive a just wage, [2263](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2263), [2277](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2277), that the order may become juridical and social, [2269](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2269).

### The Eighth Precept of the Decalogue

**XI t** A calumnious lie concerning a man of great authority can be mortal, [*1193*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1193), and mortal it certainly is to impose a false charge upon another to defend justice and honor, [*1194*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1194). Purely mental restriction is illicit, [*1176–1178*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1176-1178).

## THE SACRAMENTS

### The Sacraments in General

**XII a** *Essence*: The sacraments are means of grace, [139](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.139), [844ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.844), [C[[125]](#footnote-126)731, sec. 1](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_731,_$C2$A71) or “the symbols of a sacred thing and the visible forms of invisible grace” [876](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.876), [1963](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1963), [2237](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2237).

The sacraments of the Old Law differed from the sacraments of the New Law, [845](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.845), [857](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.857), in that they did not cause grace but symbolized it, [695](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.695); they foretold the Messias [711](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.711), at whose coming they ceased, [712](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.712).

The sacraments of the New Law “through which all true justice either begins, or begun is increased, or lost is regained” [843a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.843a), contain and confer the grace signified: see, [Effect](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?pos=IDX.2.13.2.1%3AEFFECT); they differ among themselves in dignity, [846](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.846); they are not contemned without sin, [424](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.424), [*484*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.484), [669](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.669), nor condemned without heresy, [367](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.367).

They are instituted by Christ, [570m](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.570m), [844](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.844), [996f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.996), [1470](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1470), [*2039 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2039), [2088](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2088), [2096](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2096), [C[[126]](#footnote-127)731 sec. 1](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_731,_$C2$A71), or perfect, [969](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.969), [2237](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2237), not only to nourish faith alone, [848](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.848), [*2041*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2041), nor as mere signs of justice received, [849](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.849); they are neither more nor fewer than seven, [402](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.402), [424](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.424), [449ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.449), [465](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.465), [695](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.695), [844](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.844), [996f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.996), [1470](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1470).

They are accomplished with due matter and form, [98](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.98), [672](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.672), [695](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.695), [895](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.895), [959](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.959), [1489](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1489), [1963](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1963), [C[[127]](#footnote-128)742 sec. 1](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_742), “with the intention on the part of the minister of doing what the Church does” [672](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.672), [695](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.695), [854](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.854), [860](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.860), [*1318*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1318), [3004](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3004); the ceremonies accompanying the administration can be changed by the Church as long as the substance is preserved, [931](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.931), [570m](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.570m), [2147a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2147a), [3001](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3001), not however by the minister, [856](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.856), [1963f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1963), [C[[128]](#footnote-129)733](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_733).

Holy oils ought to be blessed by the legitimate minister, [1086](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1086).

*The effect*: The sacraments of the New Testament not only nourish faith, [848](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.848), but confer grace, [324](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.324), [410](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.410), [*539*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.539), [695](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.695), [741](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.741), [847](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.847), [849f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.849), [996](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.996), [1470](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1470), [*2039 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2039), [C[[129]](#footnote-130)731 sec. 1](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_731,_$C2$A71), from the work worked (*ex opere operato*) [851](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.851), [2089](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2089), by the power of the Holy Spirit, [424](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.424), upon all not placing an obstacle, [411](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.411), [741](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.741), [849](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.849), and that always, [850](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.850), and “whenever anyone uses them” [876](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.876), and hence no pious person should doubt concerning the power and efficacy of the sacraments, [802](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.802).

Three (only, [695](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.695), [2238](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2238)) sacraments furthermore imprint a character (which is not the Word, [*1918*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1918)) and cannot be repeated, [411](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.411), [695](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.695), [852](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.852), [960](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.960), [996f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.996), [1470](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1470), [C[[130]](#footnote-131)732, sec. 1](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_732).

The significance of “Sacrament and reality …” etc. [415](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.415).

**XII b** *The minister*: Not any Christian can validly administer all sacraments, [853](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.853), [1958](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1958); but the proper minister for each sacrament, even if he is by chance a sinner, [169](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.169), [424](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.424), [*486*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.486)*,* [*488*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.488)*,* [*545*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.545)*,* [*584*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.584), [855](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.855); who although unworthy, “truly consecrates, absolves” etc., [672](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.672), [855](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.855), [902](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.902), [920](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.920), indeed even if he is a heretic, [860](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.860), or a schismatic, [169](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.169) (a sinful person does not necessarily experience infidelity concerning the sacraments etc. [*634*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.634)), and he is the cause (ministerial) of justification, [*1058*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1058). Moreover, the minister ought to be a legitimate one, [967](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.967).

In the conferring of the sacraments it is not licit for a minister to follow a probable opinion passing over a safer one, [*1151*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1151); he ought to have the right intention, [*672*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.672)*,* [*695*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.695)*,* [*752*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.752)*,* [*854*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.854)*,* [*1318*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1318)*,* [*1966*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1966), [3004](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3004), and not use simulation, [418](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.418), [*1179*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1179), [1489](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1489); and not at will omit sacramental rites, [570 o](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.570o), [856](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.856), [996](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.996), [C[[131]](#footnote-132)733](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_733); sometimes the sacraments should be conferred conditionally, [339](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.339), [446](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.446), [*1527*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1527), [1848](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1848), [C[[132]](#footnote-133)746](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_746).

*The subject* is a man (adult) who is willing, [411](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.411), and disposed although lacking the fervor of a governing charity and long tried in it, [*1536*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1536). The legitimate subject is neither a heretic nor a schismatic [C[[133]](#footnote-134)731, sec. 2](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_731,_$C2$A72), unless perhaps a dying heretic with regard to absolution and extreme unction, [2181a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2181a).

*The necessity*: Generally the sacraments are necessary for salvation (although not all for each person, [847](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.847), [996](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.996)), either in fact or in desire, [388](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.388), [413](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.413), [847](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.847), [*1071*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1071), [C[[134]](#footnote-135)737, sec. 1](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_737).

### Baptism

**XII c** *The essence*: Baptism is the first sacrament, [86](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.86), [287](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.287), [402](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.402), [430](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.430), [465](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.465), [696](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.696), [857ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.857), [994](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.994), [C[[135]](#footnote-136)737 sec. 1](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_737); it is one, [9](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.9), [140](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.140), [347](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.347), [464](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.464), [482](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.482); it succeeded circumcision, [410](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.410).

The remote matter is natural water (only) [412](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.412), [430](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.430), [449](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.449), [482](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.482), [542](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.542), [574a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.574a), [696](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.696), [858](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.858), [C[[136]](#footnote-137)737 sec. 1](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_737), with which in case of necessity there can be mixed bichloride of mercury, [1977](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1977); saliva is not valid, [412](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.412), nor beer, [447](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.447); the proximate matter is the washing, [449](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.449), threefold, [229](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.229), or one, [250\*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.250*), [C[[137]](#footnote-138)737 sec. 1](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_737), or immersion, [229](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.229), [398](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.398), [413](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.413), [C[[138]](#footnote-139)758](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_758).

The form is not the invocation of the angels, [82](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.82), nor merely the invocation of the Trinity, [*1317*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1317), but the words “I baptize thee in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit” [82](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.82), [97](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.97), [229](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.229), [249](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.249), [297](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.297), [334a f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.334a), [398](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.398), [413](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.413), [430](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.430), [482](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.482), [*542*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.542), [696](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.696), [860](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.860), [*1317*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1317), or (among the Greeks): “Let him be baptized.…” [696](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.696), with a condition added, where there is need, [399](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.399), [1527](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1527), [“in the name of Christ” [47](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.47), [94](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.94), [97](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.97), [229](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.229), [335](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.335); [“in the name of the Trinity” [82](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.82), [97](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.97), [334a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.334a), [335](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.335), [430](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.430); [“in the Holy Spirit” [1](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1)].

*The effects* are: an application of the merits of Christ, [790](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.790), and hence a change into a new creature, [895](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.895), the remission of sins in general, [4](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.4), [109a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.109a), [130](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.130), [250\*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.250*), [287](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.287), [324](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.324), [410](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.410), [464](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.464), [482](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.482), [*742*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.742), [792](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.792), [895](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.895), [*1057*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1057), especially original sin, [102](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.102), [109a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.109a), [*160a*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.160a), [329](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.329), [348](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.348), [410f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.410), [424](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.424), [574a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.574a), [696](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.696), [792](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.792), and personal sin, [424](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.424), [574a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.574a), [696](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.696), [895](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.895), provided man consents, [410](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.410), the remission of temporal punishment, [464](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.464), [696](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.696), [792](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.792), [807](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.807), [904](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.904), the conferring of grace, [130](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.130), [483](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.483), [792](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.792), [799](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.799), [933](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.933), adoption into the sonship of God, [712](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.712), regeneration, [102](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.102), [109a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.109a), [140](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.140), [324](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.324), [695f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.695), [933](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.933), the infusion of virtues, [410](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.410), [483](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.483), [800](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.800), union with Christ, whose member the baptized person is made, [197](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.197), [696](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.696), [790](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.790), [895](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.895), [933](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.933), [2229](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2229), liberation from the power of the devil, [140](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.140), [712](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.712), [904](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.904), the conferring of the gifts of the Holy Spirit, [904](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.904), the beginning of the spiritual life, [696](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.696), reception into the Church, [324](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.324), [570a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.570a), [696](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.696), [864](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.864), [870](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.870), [*1413*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1413), [1936a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1936a), [2203](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2203), [C[[139]](#footnote-140)87](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_87), the opening of heaven, [139](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.139), [410](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.410), [424](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.424), [530](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.530), [693](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.693), [696](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.696), [792](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.792), the imprinting of a character, [411](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.411), [695](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.695), [852](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.852), [960](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.960), the obligation of preserving the law of Christ, [200](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.200), [411](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.411), [829f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.829), [863f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.863), [869](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.869), [C[[140]](#footnote-141)87](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_87), and the power, [200](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.200), [804](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.804), [828](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.828), [*1042*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1042)*,* [*1054*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1054)*,* [*1092*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1092).

But baptism does not give inamissible grace, [862](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.862); nor does it take away concupiscence, [792](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.792), [*1393*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1393); nor does it make actual grace superfluous, [132](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.132); nor does it of itself dissolve legitimate marriage (Pauline Priv.) [407](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.407), [C[[141]](#footnote-142)1126](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1126); does not impede subsequent vows, [865](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.865); nor does the mere recollection of it destroy sin, [806](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.806).

*The end* of baptism is that a man may live his life in a Christian way, [806](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.806).

**XII d** The minister ought to be someone other than the baptized, [413](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.413), and in solemn baptism either a priest, [696](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.696), [C[[142]](#footnote-143)738](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_738) (even in the presence of a bishop, [98](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.98)) or a deacon, [52e](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.52e), [C[[143]](#footnote-144)741](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_741); in private baptism a good faithful person, [52d](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.52d), a layman, or even a woman, [712](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.712), indeed a sinner or heretic, [52d](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.52d), [46f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.46), [53](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.53), [55f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.55), [88](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.88), [94](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.94), [97](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.97), [249](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.249), [297](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.297), [334a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.334a), [696](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.696), [1470](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1470), [C[[144]](#footnote-145)742](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_742), so long as he has the intention, [672](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.672), [696](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.696), [860](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.860), [*1318*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1318), [1470](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1470), [1848](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1848), [C[[145]](#footnote-146)742 sec. 1](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_742), [3004](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3004).

*The subject*: Every man ought of necessity to receive baptism, [348](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.348), [482](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.482), [696](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.696), [712](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.712), [796](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.796), [799](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.799), [861](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.861), [870](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.870), [895](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.895), [1470](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1470), [*2042*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2042), [C[[146]](#footnote-147)737 sec. 1](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_737), at least in desire (baptism of desire) [388](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.388), [413](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.413), [796](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.796), [C[[147]](#footnote-148)737 sec. 1](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_737); even children (after the eighth day, [574a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.574a), or as soon as it can conveniently be done, [712](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.712)) and insane are to be baptized, [102](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.102), [140](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.140), [367](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.367), [410f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.410), [424](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.424), [430](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.430), [482](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.482), [574a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.574a), [712](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.712), [868](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.868), [*2043*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2043), [C[[148]](#footnote-149)745](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_745); in certain cases it is lawful to baptize the children of Jews, [1480 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1480), [1490](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1490), and non-Catholics [C[[149]](#footnote-150)750f.](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_750); adults should have the intention, [411](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.411), [1966a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1966a), and prepare themselves by various acts, [798](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.798), especially by explicit faith in the existence of one God and His remunerative and avenging justice, the Trinity and the Incarnation, [1349a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1349a) [b](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1349b), [1966a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1966a); reception is not to be put off until the time of death, [868](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.868).

*The administration*: Baptism cannot be repeated, [46](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.46), [53](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.53), [88](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.88), [97](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.97), [435](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.435), [464](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.464), [574a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.574a), [695](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.695), [852](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.852), [867](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.867), [869](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.869), [895](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.895), [996f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.996), [C[[150]](#footnote-151)732 sec. 2](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_732); some however are to be rebaptized because of invalidity, [56](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.56), [97](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.97), sometimes conditionally, [399](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.399), [1537](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1537), [1848](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1848), [C[[151]](#footnote-152)737 sec. 2](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_737), [C[[152]](#footnote-153)746](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_746), [C[[153]](#footnote-154)752 sec. 3](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_752); let exorcisms precede, [140](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.140); let anointings be used, [449](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.449); let patrons acting for the person baptized be present, [870](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.870), [C[[154]](#footnote-155)762](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_762); confirmation and communion are not required for the validity of baptism, [*542*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.542).

### Confirmation

**XII e** *Essence*: Confirmation is a true and proper sacrament, [52d](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.52d), [98](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.98), [419](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.419), [424](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.424), [465](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.465), [*543*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.543), [669](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.669), [697](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.697), [871](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.871), [*2044*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2044).

The remote matter is chrism, [419](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.419), [450](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.450), [872](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.872), made of oil and balsam, [450](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.450), [697](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.697), [1458](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1458); blessed by a bishop, [93\*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.93*), [98](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.98), [450](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.450), [571](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.571), [697](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.697), [1086](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1086), [C[[155]](#footnote-156)781 sec. 1](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_781); the proximate matter is the imposition of hands, [424](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.424), [1963](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1963), with the anointing with chrism, [419](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.419), [450](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.450), [697](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.697), [C[[156]](#footnote-157)780](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_780), [C[[157]](#footnote-158)781 sec. 2](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_781).

The form is “I sign thee.…” [697](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.697).

*The effect* is the communication of the Holy Spirit, [98](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.98), [450](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.450), for strength, [419](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.419), [695](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.695), [697](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.697); a character is imprinted upon the soul and hence this sacrament cannot be repeated, [695](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.695), [852](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.852), [960](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.960), [996](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.996), [C[[158]](#footnote-159)732 sec. 1](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_732).

*The minister*, ordinary, is the bishop alone, [52d f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.52d), [93\*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.93*), [98](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.98), [250\*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.250*), [419](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.419), [424](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.424), [450](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.450), [465](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.465), [543](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.543), [572](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.572), [*608*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.608), [697](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.697), [873](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.873), [960](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.960), [967](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.967), [1458](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1458), [2147a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2147a), [C[[159]](#footnote-160)782, sec. 1](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_782,_$C2$A71), and that is not established for evil motives, [*608*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.608); the extraordinary minister is a priest having the faculty from the Supreme Pontiff, [*543*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.543), [573f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.573), [697](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.697), [C[[160]](#footnote-161)782 sec. 2](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_782,_$C2$A72). Cf. above AAS[[161]](#footnote-162) 38 (1946) [349 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.349) (The Power of the Greek priests, [1459](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1459)n[[162]](#footnote-163)).

*The subject* is anyone baptized, [465](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.465), [871](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.871), [C[[163]](#footnote-164)786](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_786) (even an infant, [98](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.98)); he is not bound however by a necessity of means of salvation, [52e](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.52e), [C[[164]](#footnote-165)787](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_787), anyone contemning it sins mortally, [669](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.669).

### The Eucharist

The Real Presence; the Sacrament

**XII f** *The presence of Christ* in the Eucharist is true, real, identical, [355](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.355), [414](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.414), [424](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.424), [430](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.430), [465](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.465), [*544*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.544), [574a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.574a), [*583*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.583), [666](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.666), [698](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.698), [*717f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.717), [874ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.874), [883ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.883), [890](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.890), [997](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.997), [1469](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1469), [5004](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.5004), not only with regard to His divinity, [*717 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.717); it is accomplished by transubstantiation, [355](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.355), [416](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.416), [424](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.424), [430](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.430), [465](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.465), [*544*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.544)*,* [*581*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.581), [666](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.666), [698](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.698), [715](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.715), [877](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.877), [884](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.884), [997](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.997), [1469](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1469), [*1529*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1529)*,* [*1919*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1919)*,* [*3018*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3018), which is not impanation, [*1845*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1845); the substances of bread and wine cease, [*581 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.581), [877](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.877), [884](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.884); likewise the nature of bread with its elements, [*1843 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1843), the appearances (accidents) remaining without a subject, [416](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.416), [*582*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.582), [884](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.884); and by force of the words the body and blood of Christ exist under the different appearances, the rest by concomitance, [876](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.876), [885](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.885), [*1921*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1921), and that not only in use, [715](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.715), [876](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.876), [886](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.886), but as long as the appearances remain, [*578 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.578), so that Christ is whole under each appearance, [626](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.626), [667](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.667), [698](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.698), [874](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.874), [932](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.932), [936](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.936), [997](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.997), [1469](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1469), and (when a separation is made) under each part, [698](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.698), [876](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.876), [885](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.885), [1469](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1469), [*1921*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1921); which mode of existing is sacramental, not natural, [874](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.874); this transubstantiation concerning which the faithful are explicitly to be taught, [*1529*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1529), was not rightly explained by Rosmini and others, [*1843 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1843)*,* [*1919 ff*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1919).

*Essence*: The Eucharist is a true sacrament, [367](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.367), [402](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.402), [430](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.430), [437](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.437), [465](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.465), [542](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.542), [626](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.626), [666](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.666), [698](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.698), instituted by Christ at the last supper, [874 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.874), [*2045*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2045), as a symbol of mystical union, [873a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.873a), [875](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.875), [882](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.882).

*The Matter* is wheat bread, [692](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.692), [698](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.698), [715](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.715), [876](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.876), [C[[165]](#footnote-166)815 sec. 1](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_815), either without leaven (among those of the Latin Church) [350](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.350), [465](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.465), [692](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.692), or leavened (among the Greeks) [692](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.692), [C[[166]](#footnote-167)816](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_816), and wine of grapes, [414](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.414), [416](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.416), [430](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.430), [698](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.698), [945](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.945), [956](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.956), [C[[167]](#footnote-168)815 sec. 2](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_815) (which where there is need, may be allowed to boil to 65° [1937](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1937), and to have an alcoholic strength of 12% or 18% [1938](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1938)); with which a little water ought to be mixed, [416](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.416), [441](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.441), [452](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.452), [698](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.698), [C[[168]](#footnote-169)814](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_814), because of the mystical signification, [698](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.698), [945](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.945), [956](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.956); the water however is not changed into phlegm, [416 f](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.416).

*The Form* is the words of Christ, [414](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.414), [424](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.424), [452](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.452), [698](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.698), [715](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.715), [876](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.876), [938](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.938), not however the epiclesis [416 f](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.416).

*The Minister*: A priest rightly ordained having the proper intention validly consecrates, [424](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.424), [430](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.430), [574a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.574a), [715](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.715), [C[[169]](#footnote-170)802](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_802), not however a deacon, [53\*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.53*), [C[[170]](#footnote-171)802](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_802), nor anyone else (although holy) [424](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.424), [430](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.430), [574a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.574a); for lawfulness the state of grace is required, [418](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.418), [880](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.880), [C[[171]](#footnote-172)807](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_807).

*Worship*: The Eucharist is to be kept (not beyond fifteen days, [452](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.452)) [879](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.879), [886](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.886), [889](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.889), [C[[172]](#footnote-173)1265](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1265), and honored with a worship of latria [878](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.878), [888](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.888), [C[[173]](#footnote-174)1255](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1255), even by the perfect, [*478*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.478).

### Communion

**XII g** *Consuming* the Eucharist is distinguished in three ways: sacramental, spiritual and both together, [881](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.881), [890](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.890), [C[[174]](#footnote-175)863](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_863); the sacramental is in this life alone and is had only in the New Testament, [*1922*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1922); the whole Christ is consumed under each appearance, [626](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.626), [876](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.876), [932](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.932), [936](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.936), hence communion can be made under either appearance alone, [626](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.626), [931](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.931), [935](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.935), while the consuming of the chalice is not of divine precept for those not sacrificing, [930](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.930), [934 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.934); for this reason communion under one appearance is to be preserved (according to the statute of the Church, [626](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.626), [931](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.931), [955](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.955)) [626](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.626), [668](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.668), [756](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.756), [C[[175]](#footnote-176)852](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_852), it is to be distributed to the faithful ordinarily by a priest, [881 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.881), [892](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.892), [C[[176]](#footnote-177)845 sec. 1](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_845,_$C2$A71), extraordinarily by a deacon [C[[177]](#footnote-178)845 sec. 2](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_845,_$C2$A72).

*The subject*: Children are not obliged to receive communion, [933](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.933), [937](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.937) [C[[178]](#footnote-179)854, sec. 1](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_854), but those who reach the age of discretion are bound to communicate each year at least at Paschal time, [437](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.437), [891](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.891), [*1922*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1922), [2137](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2137), [C[[179]](#footnote-180)859](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_859); but a sacrilegious communion does not satisfy this precept, [*1205*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1205), [C[[180]](#footnote-181)861](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_861).

For the lawful reception faith alone does not suffice, [*755*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.755), [893](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.893), but there is required (and as far as the soul is concerned suffices, [*1439*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1439)) “a great reverence and sanctity” [880 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.880), that is the state of grace which is acquired by confession, not only by contrition, [880](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.880), [893](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.893), [C[[181]](#footnote-182)856](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_856); moreover, one receiving should be fasting, [626](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.626), [C[[182]](#footnote-183)858](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_858) (unless he be infirm, [626](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.626)), rightly prepared (by positive acts) [*755*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.755), [880](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.880), [*1252*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1252); but penance fulfilled is not necessary nor must the most pure charity be attained, [*1312 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1312); the Eucharist is to be kept for the sick, [452](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.452), not however too long, [452](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.452), and transported with honor, [879](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.879), [889](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.889), [C[[183]](#footnote-184)847](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_847), even to the young, [2144](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2144).

In danger of death Viaticum should be received [C[[184]](#footnote-185)864](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_864).

Frequent or even daily communion is not necessary by divine law, [1150](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1150), but it is commended to all who approach it with a right mind, [881 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.881), [944](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.944), [955](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.955), [1147ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1147), [1978](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1978), [1981ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1981), [C[[185]](#footnote-186)863](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_863); even the young, [2137 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2137), [C[[186]](#footnote-187)863](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_863).

*The effect* is not bodily sustenance, [*546*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.546), nor especially nor solely remission of sins, [882](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.882), [887](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.887); but union with Christ (without the changing of Christ into the subject, [546](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.546)) and an increase of grace and the virtues, [546](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.546), [698](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.698); the remission of venial sins and penalties, [546](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.546), [875](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.875), [887](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.887), [1981](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1981); preservation from mortal sins, [875](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.875), [1981](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1981); perseverance in good, [882](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.882); communion is the spiritual food of the soul, [695](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.695), [698](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.698), and the pledge of future glory, [875](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.875), [882](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.882), [887](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.887); which effect does not depend upon confidence alone, [*755*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.755); frequent communion of itself is not a mark of predestination, [*1206*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1206).

### The Sacrifice of the Mass

**XII h** *Essence*: The Mass is a sacrifice, [424](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.424), [430](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.430), [441](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.441), [452](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.452), [464](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.464), [938ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.938), [948ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.948), [957](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.957), [997](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.997), divine, [940](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.940), singular, [937a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.937a), but true, [937a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.937a), [948](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.948), [997](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.997), [*1045*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1045), [1469](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1469), and proper, [948](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.948), [997](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.997), [1469](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1469), prefigured by the sacrifices of nature and the Law, [938 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.938), visible, [938](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.938), [957](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.957); instituted by Christ at the Last Supper, [938 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.938), [949](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.949), [957](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.957), [961](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.961), [963](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.963), as is established in the Gospel, [*585*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.585); by which the sacrifice of the Cross is represented and applied, [938](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.938), [940](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.940); from which it then does not detract, [940](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.940), [951](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.951).

The sacrifice does not consist in the communion alone, [948](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.948), nor is there required the presence of the faithful or the (even spiritual) communion of those assisting, [944](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.944), [955](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.955), [1528](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1528); which (even sacramental) is recommended, [944](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.944), [1981ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1981), [C[[187]](#footnote-188)863](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_863).

The victim of the Mass is Christ Himself, [424](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.424), [430](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.430), [940](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.940), [2195](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2195), offered in another way than on the Cross, [940](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.940).

The principal one offering is Christ Himself, [424](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.424), [430](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.430), [940](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.940), [2195](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2195), [3000](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3000), by the ministration of priests, [424](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.424), [434](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.434), [940](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.940).—The priest who after mortal sin cannot confess and has to celebrate, having made a perfect act of contrition, after celebrating should confess as soon as possible, [880](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.880), and that according to precept, [*1138 f*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1138). The faithful in their own way coöffer, [3000](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3000).

*The Effect*: The Mass is a sacrifice of latria [950](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.950); hence it is offered to God alone, not to the saints, [941](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.941), in whose honor nevertheless it can be offered, [952](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.952); it is in thanksgiving, [950](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.950); it is in supplication and propitiation, [940](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.940), [950](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.950), [996f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.996), [1469](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1469), [2195](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2195).

By this sacrifice sins (even grave) are remitted indirectly, [940](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.940), temporal punishments, however for contrite penitents even directly, [940](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.940), [950](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.950); it is of benefit not only to the one receiving, [950](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.950), but especially for him to whom the fruit is applied, [*1530*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1530), [C[[188]](#footnote-189)828](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_828); it can be offered for the faithful departed, [427](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.427), [464](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.464), [693](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.693), [940](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.940), [944](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.944), [950](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.950), [983](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.983), [996](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.996), [C[[189]](#footnote-190)809](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_809). For the celebration and application of one Mass it is not lawful to accept a double stipend by offering a most special fruit, [*1108*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1108), and one injures justice who accepts stipends for many Masses and offers only one, [*1110*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1110), and likewise he injures fidelity by promising what he offers for no other, [*1110*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1110). An annual legacy endures only for ten years, [*1143*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1143).

*The manner of offering*: The Church rightly instituted the various ceremonies to be observed in the sacrifice and retains the Latin language, [943](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.943), [946](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.946), [954](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.954), [956](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.956), [*1436*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1436), [C[[190]](#footnote-191)818 f.](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_818); in particular the Canon of the Mass is to be venerated, [414](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.414), [942](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.942), and retained, [953](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.953); a little water should be mixed with the wine, [416 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.416), [452](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.452), [698](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.698), [945](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.945), [956](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.956), [C[[191]](#footnote-192)814](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_814); simulated celebration is illicit, [418](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.418); consecration outside of Mass or under only one appearance never is licit [C[[192]](#footnote-193)817](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_817). Mass can be said on many altars of the same Church, [1531](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1531).

### Penance

**XII i** *Essence*: Penance is a true sacrament of the New Testament, [146](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.146), [402](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.402), [424](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.424), [465](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.465), [699](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.699), [807ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.807), [894f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.894), [911ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.911), [2046](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2046); different from baptism and capable of being repeated, [839](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.839), [894f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.894), [897](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.897), [911](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.911) (“a second plank after shipwreck” [807](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.807)); instituted by Christ (John, [20](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.20), [23](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.23)) [732](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.732), [807](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.807), [894](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.894), [913](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.913), in the form of a judgment, [895](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.895), [899](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.899), [902](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.902), [919](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.919), [2047](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2047); to whose dignity the usages introduced by the Church are not contrary, [*1534*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1534).

The sacramental form is not an anointing, [451](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.451), but a judicial sentence, [807](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.807), [895](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.895), [902](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.902), [919](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.919), through the words of the priest: “I absolve thee.…” [*538*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.538), [699](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.699), [807](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.807), [895](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.895), [896](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.896), which ought to be proffered to one present, [*1088 f*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1088). By its power sins are forgiven, [*538*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.538), [896](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.896), not however by reason of the confidence of a man that he is absolved, [1418](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1418), nor “confident” faith, [802](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.802), [823 f](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.823).

The matter or quasi-matter is the acts of the penitent, [699](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.699), [896](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.896), [914](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.914), contrition, confession, satisfaction, which are also called “parts” [146](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.146), [671](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.671), [699](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.699), [*745*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.745), [896](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.896), [914](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.914).

Contrition is a “grief of soul and detestation for sin committed, with a purpose of not sinning again” [*514*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.514)[*747*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.747), [897](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.897), so that a man would completely wish not to have sinned, [*514 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.514); it is a free and voluntary act, [898](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.898); it is divided according to motives into natural which (although not sinful, [*1299*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1299), nevertheless) is not sufficient for justification, [*1207*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1207), and supernatural which is necessary for absolution, [699](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.699), [*751 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.751), [897f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.897), [*1536*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1536). Contrition is to be manifested to a confessor, [*754*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.754), and should be the foundation for the hope of improvement, [*1210*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1210), and especially with regard to the flight of the proximate free occasion, [*1211 ff*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1211).

One kind is perfect proceeding from charity, [898](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.898), which without desire for the sacrament is inefficacious, [898](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.898); with desire for it always justifies, [898](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.898), [*1071*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1071); it does not make confession superfluous, [*587*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.587).

Another kind is imperfect (attrition) proceeding “commonly from a consideration of the shamefulness of sin or from a fear of hell and punishment” [898](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.898), [915](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.915), [*1305*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1305).

Attrition does not necessarily include the love of God, [1146](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1146), [*1305*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1305); it is however a good motion, [*746*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.746), [898](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.898), [915](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.915), [*1411*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1411)[*1417*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1417), a free and voluntary act, [897](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.897), [915](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.915), [*1300*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1300), and likewise useful, [*1410*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1410), disposing to grace, [898](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.898), [915](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.915), nevertheless without the sacrament it does not justify, [898](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.898), [915](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.915), [*1305*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1305)*,* [*1410*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1410), but with the sacrament suffices for justification, [898](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.898).

Confession is necessary for salvation by divine right, [699](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.699), [*724 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.724), [899](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.899), [916f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.916), [919](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.919), and ought to include the grave sins committed after baptism, [146](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.146), [430](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.430), [437](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.437), [699](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.699), [*724 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.724), [807](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.807), [894f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.894), [911](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.911), [C[[193]](#footnote-194)901](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_901) (not yet directly forgiven by the power of the keys, [470](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.470), [*491*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.491)*,* [*493*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.493)), which should be manifested integrally, [574a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.574a), [899](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.899), [917](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.917), [*1111*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1111)*,* [*1209*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1209), according to the last species, [*1124*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1124)[*1200*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1200), [C[[194]](#footnote-195)901](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_901), with a material integrity or at least formal, [147](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.147), [699](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.699), [900f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.900), [*1111*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1111); for this reason sins both merely internal and manifest should be brought in to the accusation, [*726*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.726)[*748*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.748), [899](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.899), and even circumstances changing the species, [899](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.899), [917](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.917); sins inculpably omitted are to be indicated in a subsequent confession, [*1111*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1111); evil customs are not to be denied, [*1208*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1208); and this formal integrity is of divine law, [699](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.699), [*724 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.724), [899](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.899), [917](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.917); nor does a crowd of people excuse from it, [*1209*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1209). Confession of this kind is neither impossible, [900](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.900), [918](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.918), nor a torture of conscience, [900](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.900).

Venial or grave sins already directly forgiven are not necessarily but laudably confessed, [470](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.470), [*748 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.748), [899](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.899), [917](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.917), [1539](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1539), [C[[195]](#footnote-196)902](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_902).

Confession should be external and oral, [*587*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.587), [699](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.699); secret facts however known made to the priest alone suffices, [145](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.145), [*727*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.727), [901](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.901), [916](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.916), and can even be by signs, [147](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.147); or through an interpreter [C[[196]](#footnote-197)903](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_903).

Salutary and appropriate satisfaction (by the power of the keys, [925](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.925)) should be imposed, [146](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.146), [671](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.671), [699](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.699), [899](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.899), [904ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.904), [925](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.925), [C[[197]](#footnote-198)887](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_887), as a medicine, [904](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.904), and a punishment, [904](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.904) and it should be fulfilled by the penitent (himself) [437](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.437), [807](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.807), [*1115*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1115), [C[[198]](#footnote-199)887](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_887), not necessarily and by divine law before the absolution, [*728*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.728)*,* [*1306–1308*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1306-1308)*,* [*1437f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1437)*,* [*1534 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1534), or before communion, [*1312*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1312); it does not consist in a confident faith, [922](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.922), not in any anointing, [451](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.451), but in good works, [699](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.699), by which God is truly worshiped, [924](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.924), especially in prayer, fasting and alms, [699](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.699), [807](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.807); which have their power from the merits of Christ, [904](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.904) [923](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.923), and that sacramental, [*1535*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1535), and from the work of the one working they have merit condignly, [*1077*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1077).

**XII k** *The effect* of this sacrament, unless it is a “false penance” [366](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.366), is spiritual healing, [695](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.695), recovery of lost justice, [839](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.839), reconciliation with God and remission of sins committed after baptism, [424](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.424), [430](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.430), [464](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.464), [671](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.671), [699](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.699), [840](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.840), [894](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.894), [896](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.896), [911](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.911), [*1057 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1057), [C[[199]](#footnote-200)870](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_870), even if they are not “believed” to be remitted, [*750 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.750); which can all be forgiven by this sacrament, [43](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.43), [167](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.167), even if after penance they are again committed, [*540*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.540); remission of penalty especially eternal, [807](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.807), [840](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.840), [*1057 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1057); not however of all the temporal punishment, [456](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.456), [*535*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.535), [807](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.807), [840](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.840), “without our great tears and labors” [895](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.895), peace and consolation, [896](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.896); likewise the perfect revival of merits killed and grace lost, [2193](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2193); liberation from censures, [*1144*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1144), C[[200]](#footnote-201)2247 ff.

*The necessity* of the sacrament is of divine law, [*724 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.724), indeed is of means or of salvation, [574a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.574a), [670](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.670), [839](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.839), in itself or in desire, [807](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.807), [895](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.895), even to one of the faithful who is contrite, [*587*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.587)*,* [*725*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.725).

*The minister* of penance is not a layman, [670](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.670), [*753*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.753), but only a priest, [95\*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.95*), [146](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.146), [807](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.807), [902](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.902), [920](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.920), [957](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.957), [C[[201]](#footnote-202)871](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_871), who ought to have jurisdiction, [437](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.437), [574a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.574a), [699](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.699), [903](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.903), [919](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.919), [921](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.921), [*1113*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1113)*,* [*1116*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1116)*,* [*1537*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1537), [C[[202]](#footnote-203)872](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_872) (different for different reserved cases, [*753*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.753), [903](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.903), [921](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.921), [1103f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1103), [*1112*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1112)*,* [*1545*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1545), which reservation ceases in danger of death, [903](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.903)), even for the absolution of venial sins, [1150](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1150), [C[[203]](#footnote-204)872](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_872); he ought not always of necessity to be the pastor of the one confessing, [470](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.470), [*492*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.492), [574a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.574a), [*1310*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1310), but it is necessary that he act sincerely, [*752*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.752), [902](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.902), [919](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.919).

The sacramental seal is to be strictly preserved, [145](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.145), [438](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.438), [*1220*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1220), [C[[204]](#footnote-205)889 f.](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_889), and the name of an accomplice is by no means to be sought, [1474](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1474), [C[[205]](#footnote-206)888](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_888).

Solicitation is held to be avoided, even when the confessor gives the penitent a card (with a written solicitation) to be read afterward, [*1106*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1106), and the obligation of denouncing does not cease, if the one solicited confesses to the one soliciting, [*1107*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1107).

*The subject* is man baptized and fallen, [146](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.146), [430](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.430), [807](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.807), [894f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.894), [899](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.899), [911](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.911), [913ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.913), [C[[206]](#footnote-207)901](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_901); who ought to be present, [*1088 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1088); absolution is not to be denied to penitents about to die, [57](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.57), [88\*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.88*), [95](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.95), [95\*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.95*), [111](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.111), [*1538*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1538), nor destitute of his senses, if it is certain that he had and manifested the desire, [147](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.147), [*1089*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1089), neither even to usurers rightly disposed, [1612](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1612), nor to the relapsed or recidivists, [*1538*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1538), nor to fornicators or adulterers, [43](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.43); nor for one disposed is it to be put off, [*1437 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1437), [C[[207]](#footnote-208)886](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_886), but for habitual and occasional sinners who are indisposed it is to be denied or put off, [1210 ff](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1210).; likewise for those ignorant of the mysteries of the faith, such as the Trinity and the Incarnation, [1214](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1214) (which it does not suffice to have believed once, [*1215*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1215)).

Confession is to be made at least once a year, [437](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.437), [470](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.470), [901](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.901), [918](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.918), [C[[208]](#footnote-209)906](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_906); it is advisable that it be done in Lent, [901](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.901), [918](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.918), not necessarily to one’s own pastor, [*492*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.492), [C[[209]](#footnote-210)905](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_905), but it can be made to a religious, [*491*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.491); sacrilegious confession does not satisfy the precept of the Church, [*1114*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1114), [C[[210]](#footnote-211)907](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_907).

## INDULGENCES

**XII l** *Essence*: They are not pious frauds of the faithful, [*758*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.758), but the remission of the temporal punishment (after the sin has been taken away) [740a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.740a), [*1060*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1060), [C[[211]](#footnote-212)911](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_911), to be paid before God, [622](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.622), [*677*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.677), [740a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.740a), [759](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.759), [1540](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1540), through the application of the treasury of the Church (that is, of the merits or satisfactions of Christ and of the saints, [550 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.550), [723a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.723a), [740a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.740a), [*757*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.757)*,* [*1060*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1060), [1471](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1471), [*1541*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1541), [2193](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2193), [C[[212]](#footnote-213)911](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_911), made to the living by way of an absolution, for the dead as a suffrage, [740a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.740a), [C[[213]](#footnote-214)911](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_911), through the Roman Pontiff, [551](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.551), [570k](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.570k), [676](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.676), [723a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.723a), [*729*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.729), [740a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.740a), [989](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.989), [998](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.998), [1471](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1471), [C[[214]](#footnote-215)912](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_912), especially in a jubilee, [467](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.467), [2193](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2193), or through a bishop for his subjects, [678](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.678), [C[[215]](#footnote-216)349 sec. 2](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_349), for reasonable causes, [551](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.551), [676](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.676), [740a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.740a); they were in use from ancient times, [989](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.989).

Effects are salutary and useful, [*622*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.622)*,* [*723a*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.723a), [740a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.740a), [*758*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.758)*,* [*760 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.760), [989](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.989), [998](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.998), [*1236*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1236), [1471](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1471), [C[[216]](#footnote-217)911](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_911); they take away the temporal punishment due even to hidden sins, [761 f](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.761).; they can be applied to the dead, [723a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.723a), [740a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.740a), [1542](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1542), [C[[217]](#footnote-218)911 f.](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_911), whom they truly benefit, [762](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.762).

The effect depends on the reception of baptism, freedom from excommunication (the state of grace, [551](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.551), [676](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.676), [740a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.740a), [C[[218]](#footnote-219)925](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_925)), the fulfilling of the prescribed work, [677](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.677), [C[[219]](#footnote-220)925](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_925). The lists of indulgences are laudably established, [1543](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1543); those revoked, however, have no value, [*1137*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1137).

### Extreme Unction

**XII m** *Essence*: It is a true sacrament instituted by Christ and promulgated by St. James, [99](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.99), [315](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.315), [424](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.424), [451](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.451), [465](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.465), [669](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.669), [700](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.700), [907ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.907), [926ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.926), [*2048*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2048); hence it is not a rite instituted by the Fathers, [926](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.926), nor the same as the grace of curing, [927](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.927).

The matter is the anointing with oil of the infirm blessed by a bishop, [99](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.99), [424](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.424), [700](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.700), [908](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.908), [1628](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1628), [C[[220]](#footnote-221)937](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_937), [C[[221]](#footnote-222)945](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_945), not by a simple priest, [1629](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1629), except with an apostolic faculty [C[[222]](#footnote-223)945](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_945).

The form is either the longer ordinary form, [700](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.700), [908](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.908), or the extraordinary and very short one, [1990](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1990), [C[[223]](#footnote-224)946 sec. 1](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_946).

*The effect* is the grace of the Holy Spirit, [909](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.909), [927](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.927), remission of sins, [315](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.315), [909](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.909), [927](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.927), spiritual health, [695](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.695), [700](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.700), arousing of the confidence of divine mercy, [909](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.909), alleviation of soul, [909](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.909), [927](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.927), cleansing of the remains of sin, [909](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.909), strength against the temptations of the devil, [909](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.909); sometimes even the health of the body, [315](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.315), [700](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.700), [909](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.909).

*The minister* is the priest, [99](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.99), [700](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.700), [908](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.908), [910](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.910), [929](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.929), each and alone [C[[224]](#footnote-225)938 sec. 1](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_938,_$C2$A71).

*The subject* is a man gravely ill, [451](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.451), [700](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.700), [908](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.908), [910](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.910), [C[[225]](#footnote-226)940](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_940), as often as he should fall back into danger of his life even after convalescence, [910](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.910), [C[[226]](#footnote-227)940 sec. 2](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_940); of itself it is presupposed that the person is in the state of grace, [99](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.99), [315](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.315).

*The necessity* is not *per se* the means [C[[227]](#footnote-228)944](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_944), but anyone contemning it sins mortally, [669](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.669), [910](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.910), [928](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.928).

The rites customarily employed by the Church are to be observed, [910](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.910), [928](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.928).

### Orders

**XII n** *The priesthood is in general* necessary and existed in every law, [957](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.957), [2274](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2274), with its functions, [2274](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2274), especially in revealed law, [957](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.957), [2274](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2274). In the New Law the priest is “another Christ,” whose person he acts, [2275](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2275), [3000](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3000).

*The essence*: There are distinguished major and minor orders, [150 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.150), [454](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.454), [958](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.958), [962](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.962), [C[[228]](#footnote-229)949](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_949), constituting an ecclesiastical hierarchy, [42](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.42), [45](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.45), [89](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.89), [150ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.150), [305](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.305), [360](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.360), [960](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.960), [962](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.962), [966](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.966), [C[[229]](#footnote-230)109](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_109); the episcopacy, the priesthood, and diaconate are of divine institution, [42](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.42), [305](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.305), [356](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.356), [958](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.958), [966](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.966), [C[[230]](#footnote-231)108 sec. 3](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_108,_$C2$A73); the subdiaconate is a major order, [45](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.45), [153](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.153), [305](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.305), [958](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.958), [C[[231]](#footnote-232)949](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_949).

The minor orders are acolyte, exorcist, lector, ostiarius, [45](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.45), [154ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.154), [426](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.426), [*547*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.547), [958](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.958), [*1555*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1555), [C[[232]](#footnote-233)949](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_949), [C[[233]](#footnote-234)111 sec. 2](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_111,_$C2$A72); they should precede the sacred orders, [958](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.958), [962](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.962), [*1551*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1551); they are not however required for the validity of the sacred orders, [454](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.454); they are to be put into use, [*1556*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1556). The tonsure is a sign of the clerical state, [958](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.958), [C[[234]](#footnote-235)108](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_108).

There exists a true sacrament of orders, [367](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.367), [465](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.465), [701](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.701), [957ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.957), [959f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.959), [961](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.961), [963 f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.963); instituted by Christ, [949](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.949), [957ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.957), [963](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.963), [*2049 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2049); in which a visible and external priesthood is established, [957](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.957); the diaconate equally as the priesthood is a sacrament, [356](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.356); and it does not consist in the mere rite of choosing ministers of the Word of God, [963](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.963).

The form of sacramental orders is the words (prayer) of the one ordaining for the various ones, [150 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.150), [445](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.445), [*547*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.547), [701](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.701), [959](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.959), [964](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.964), [1963ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1963), [3001](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3001).

The matter is the imposition of hands, [150 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.150), [305](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.305), [445](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.445), [701](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.701)n[[235]](#footnote-236), [910](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.910), [950](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.950), [3001](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3001), to which is added the handing over of the instruments, [150 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.150), [701](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.701), the anointing and the other ceremonies, [965](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.965).

*The end* is the governance and increase of the Church, [695](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.695), the perpetual conservation of the mission and of the power of the apostles, [*2050*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2050), the ministration of divine worship, [2238](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2238), [C[[236]](#footnote-237)948](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_948).

*The effect* is grace (with which the one ordained should freely cooperate, [2275](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2275)) and communication of the Holy Spirit, [701](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.701), [902](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.902), [959](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.959), [964](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.964), [3001](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3001), the indelible sacramental character, [695](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.695), [852](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.852), [960](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.960), [964](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.964), [996f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.996), [2275](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2275), [C[[237]](#footnote-238)732 sec. 1](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_732) (for this reason it cannot be repeated, [695](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.695), [852](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.852), [960](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.960), [C[[238]](#footnote-239)732](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_732)), with the power (arising from the character, [2275](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2275)) various in the various orders, [960](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.960);

in the episcopacy: the succession in the place of the Apostles, [960](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.960), the power of ordaining, [150 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.150), [424](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.424), [701](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.701), [960](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.960), [967](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.967), of confirming, [419](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.419), [424](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.424), [465](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.465), [572](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.572), [697](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.697), [873](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.873), [960](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.960), [967](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.967), [1458](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1458), [C[[239]](#footnote-240)951](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_951), of blessing the chrism of confirmation, [98](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.98), [571](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.571), [697](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.697), [1086](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1086), [C[[240]](#footnote-241)734 sec. 1](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_734), [C[[241]](#footnote-242)781 sec. 1](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_781), and the oil of the infirm, [99](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.99), [700](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.700), [908](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.908), [1628](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1628), [C[[242]](#footnote-243)734 sec. 1](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_734), [C[[243]](#footnote-244)945](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_945);

in the priesthood: the power of celebrating Mass and of absolving, [957](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.957), [961](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.961), [2049f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2049), [3000](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3000), [C[[244]](#footnote-245)802](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_802), [C[[245]](#footnote-246)871](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_871), of conferring anointing, [99](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.99), [910](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.910), [C[[246]](#footnote-247)938 sec. 1](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_938,_$C2$A71), of imposing hands upon those to be ordained priests, [151](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.151), of baptizing (even in the presence of a bishop) not however of confirming, [98](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.98), [1458](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1458), [C[[247]](#footnote-248)738](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_738), [C[[248]](#footnote-249)782 sec. 1](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_782,_$C2$A71), unless he is especially delegated by the Supreme Pontiff, [573](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.573) [697](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.697), [C[[249]](#footnote-250)782 sec. 2](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_782,_$C2$A72);

in the major orders: those thus constituted cannot again become laymen, [960](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.960), [964](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.964), [C[[250]](#footnote-251)211 sec. 1](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_211). They ought to preserve celibacy, [52b f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.52b), [89](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.89), [301](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.301), [360](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.360), [979](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.979), [*1774a*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1774a), [C[[251]](#footnote-252)132](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_132), and they are obliged to the Divine Office [C[[252]](#footnote-253)135](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_135); which obligation one holding a benefice does not satisfy by occupying himself in study, if he recites the Office through another, [1121](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1121), or who on Palm Sunday recites the Paschal Office, [*1134*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1134), or who performs one Office recited if for today and yesterday, [*1135*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1135), or who excused from the recitation of Matins and Lauds omits the rest of the hours, [*1204*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1204). The restitution imposed by Pius V on those holding benefices and not reciting the Office obliges in conscience before the sentence of a judge, [*1120*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1120), and it cannot be done through alms from the fruits of the benefice made before the omission, [*1133*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1133).

The ordinary *minister* is the bishop alone, [150 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.150), [424](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.424), [608](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.608), [701](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.701), [960](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.960), [967](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.967), [C[[253]](#footnote-254)951](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_951); hence the priest cannot confer the diaconate, [*548*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.548).

Ordinations conferred by heretical or schismatic bishops are illicit to be sure, but valid ([55](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.55), [57\*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.57*)) [169](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.169), [249](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.249), [354](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.354), [358](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.358), [1087](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1087), [C[[254]](#footnote-255)951](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_951); likewise orders simoniacally conferred or received, [364](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.364), C[[255]](#footnote-256)2372; Anglican orders, however, are invalid because of a defect of form, [1963 ff](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1963).

*The subject* is only a baptized man, [56](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.56) [C[[256]](#footnote-257)968 sec. 1](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_968,_$C2$A71) (even if perhaps fallen, [*1553*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1553)), examined, [301](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.301), and rightly chosen (i.e. not by a prince) [305](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.305), [339](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.339), [363](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.363), [960](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.960), [967](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.967), [*1552*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1552); initiated into previous orders, [454](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.454), and instructed with a due title, [*1551*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1551)*,* [*1553*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1553), [C[[257]](#footnote-258)968 sec. 1](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_968,_$C2$A71), [C[[258]](#footnote-259)973 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_973), free from irregularities [C[[259]](#footnote-260)983 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_983), from which nevertheless he can be dispensed, [*1556*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1556), [C[[260]](#footnote-261)990 f.](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_990); even monks can be ordained, [90](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.90), [1580](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1580), [C[[261]](#footnote-262)964](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_964). Simony in ordinations is condemned, [354](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.354), [358f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.358), [C[[262]](#footnote-263)729](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_729). Those validly ordained cannot be deprived of the (licit) use of the power, [67](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.67), C[[263]](#footnote-264)2278.

### Matrimony

**XII o** *The espousal* which precedes matrimony is under the power of the Church, [*1558*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1558), [2066](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2066), not the civil court, [*1774*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1774).

*Matrimony* is the association of a man and a woman, [1853](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1853), divinely instituted, [2225](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2225), subject to no merely human laws, [2225](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2225), signifying the union of Christ with the Church, [702](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.702), [2236](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2236), elevated by Christ to the dignity of a sacrament, [88a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.88a), [144\*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.144*), [367](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.367), [402](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.402), [406](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.406), [424](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.424), [465](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.465), [*490*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.490), [702](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.702), [969f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.969), [971](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.971), [1640](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1640), [1765](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1765), [1853](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1853), [*2051*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2051), [2225](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2225), [2237](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2237), so that the contract itself is a sacrament, [*1766*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1766), [1854](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1854), [C[[264]](#footnote-265)1012](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1012), and between the faithful there can be no valid contract without its being at the same time a sacrament, [1640](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1640), [1773](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1773);, [2237](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2237), [5006](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.5006); hence it is invalidated by a condition added against its nature, while a condition of something shameful is considered as not added, [466](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.466), [C[[265]](#footnote-266)1092](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1092).

The form of this sacrament is not the nuptial blessing, [*1766*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1766), but the very expressed consent itself alone, [334](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.334), [397](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.397), [404](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.404), [702](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.702), [2225](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2225), [2237](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2237), [C[[266]](#footnote-267)1081](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1081); which regularly is made in words in the presence, [702](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.702), [C[[267]](#footnote-268)1088 sec. 2](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1088), but can be made by signs, [404](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.404), [C[[268]](#footnote-269)1086 sec. 1](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1086,_$C2$A71), [C[[269]](#footnote-270)1088 sec. a](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1088), in a legitimate way, [990 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.990), so the ecclesiastical form is valid, if no other civil form stands in the way, [990](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.990) [*1771*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1771), [1991ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1991), [2067 ff](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2067).

Christian marriage is either sanctioned or consummated, [976](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.976), [C[[270]](#footnote-271)1015](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1015).

*The end* is the corporal increase of the Church, [695](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.695), [2229](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2229).

*The effect* is grace sanctifying the marital union, [969 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.969), 2337, with a right to actual graces, [2237 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2237), [C[[271]](#footnote-272)1110](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1110), and the threefold good: of the child, of faith, of indivisibility, [702](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.702), [2227ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2227), [C[[272]](#footnote-273)1013](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1013); hence it follows that the unity of marriage is of divine natural law, [*1767*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1767), [2231](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2231), excluding polyandry and polygamy, [88a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.88a), [408](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.408), [465](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.465), [969](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.969), [972](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.972), [1853](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1853), [2231](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2231), [C[[273]](#footnote-274)1110](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1110), and indissolubility, [52a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.52a), [88a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.88a), [250\*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.250*), [301](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.301), [395f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.395), [424](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.424), [702](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.702), [969](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.969), [975](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.975), [977](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.977), [1470](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1470), [1865](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1865), [2225](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2225), [2234f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2234), [2249f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2249), [C[[274]](#footnote-275)1110](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1110), which is befitting marriage even only natural and legitimate, [1767](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1767), [2250](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2250).

Imperfect divorce can sometimes be decreed by the Church, [702](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.702), [978](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.978), not, however, by the civil power alone, [1640](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1640), [*1767*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1767), [1865](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1865), [C[[275]](#footnote-276)1129](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1129); perfect divorce is possible in a marriage that is sanctioned only, [395](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.395) [2236](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2236), and is done especially by solemn profession, [396](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.396) [409](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.409), [976](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.976), [C[[276]](#footnote-277)1119](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1119), and by pontifical dispensation [C[[277]](#footnote-278)1119](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1119); in one that is consummated it can in no way be done, [406](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.406), [702](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.702), [969](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.969), [975](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.975), [977](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.977), [1470](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1470), [2236](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2236), [C[[278]](#footnote-279)1118](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1118), except by the force of the Pauline privilege, [405](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.405), [408](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.408), [2236](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2236), [C[[279]](#footnote-280)1120](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1120).

*The subject*: A man and a woman capable and free from impediments, [362](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.362), [407](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.407), [973](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.973), [979](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.979), [1853](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1853), [C[[280]](#footnote-281)1035](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1035), which (impediments) are either impeding or invalidating, [973](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.973) [C[[281]](#footnote-282)1036 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1036); pagans are not under all of these, [407](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.407).

Such impediments cannot be established or taken away by the civil power, [*1560*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1560)*,* [*1770 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1770), but by the Church alone, [973](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.973) [1500a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1500a), [*1559*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1559)*,* [*1768 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1768), [C[[282]](#footnote-283)1016](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1016), [C[[283]](#footnote-284)1038](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1038). (Bonif. VIII was not the first to assert the impediment of orders, [*1772*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1772)). Matrimonial cases belong to the ecclesiastical court: *see* [II h](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?pos=IDX.2.2.3%3AIIH).

Marriages rightly accomplished are of themselves good and licit, [36](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.36), [*241*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.241), [424](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.424), [430](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.430), [*537*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.537), even many successively, [55](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.55), [424](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.424), [455](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.455), [465](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.465), [*541*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.541), [C[[284]](#footnote-285)1142](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1142); not however with infidels, [301](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.301), [C[[285]](#footnote-286)1070](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1070), and heretics, [1455](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1455), [1496](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1496), [1499](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1499)n[[286]](#footnote-287), [C[[287]](#footnote-288)1060 f](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1060). Anyone contemning the solemnizing of marriage sins mortally, [669](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.669), [981](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.981). Civil matrimony is to be reproved, [1640](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1640); even cooperation in it, [1865](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1865).

### The Sacramentals

**XII p** *They are* things or actions which the Church in a kind of imitation of the sacraments uses to obtain effects, especially spiritual ones, through their impetration [C[[288]](#footnote-289)1144](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1144); they are consecrations, blessings—whether constitutive or invocative [C[[289]](#footnote-290)1148 sec. 2](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1148,_$C2$A72), and exorcism, [140](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.140), [C[[290]](#footnote-291)1151](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1151).

*The minister* of the sacramentals is a cleric endowed with the due power, [99](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.99), [C[[291]](#footnote-292)1146](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1146); *the subjects* are Catholics, catechumens, and in some ways non-Catholics [C[[292]](#footnote-293)1149](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1149), [C[[293]](#footnote-294)1152](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1152). They should be employed in the Mass and in the prescribed administration of the sacraments, [856](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.856), [931](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.931), [943](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.943), [945](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.945), [954](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.954), [956](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.956), [965](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.965), [982](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.982); none are to be spurned, [665](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.665), [965](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.965), nor simoniacally acquired, [364](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.364).

## GOOD WORKS (MERIT) AND EVIL; CHRISTIAN PERFECTION

*The nature of works*

**XIII a** The works of a man are not indifferent, [804](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.804), [828ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.828), [834](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.834), not even external, [*386*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.386), [516 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.516) (God also accomplishes them, [*517*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.517)), nor those done by the perfect, [*472*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.472)[*476*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.476)*,* [*478*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.478)*,* [*1260*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1260); a good work or an evil one does not equally glorify God, [*504*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.504)[*514 f*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.514).

The works of man are not immediately divided into virtuous and vicious according to the virtuousness or viciousness of the agent, [*642*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.642)*,* [*1297*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1297), but there are also naturally good works, which yet do not merit beatitude, [*642*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.642), [817](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.817), [*1002 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1002)*,* [*1012*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1012)*,* [*1037*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1037)*,* [*1301*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1301), which (good works) can be done without grace, [*1025*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1025)*,* [*1037f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1037)*,* [*1352f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1352)*,* [*1388ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1388)*,* [*1392*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1392)*,* [*1395 ff*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1395).

The goodness of works is not realized, if the natural appetite enjoys its acts, [*1158 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1158); it does not depend on an accord with reason alone with reference to God, [*1289*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1289).

Not all works done before justification are sins, [817](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.817), [898](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.898), [915](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.915), [*898*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.898)*,* [*915*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.915)*,* [*1063*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1063)*,* [*1523*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1523); for this reason infidels do not sin in all their works, [*1022*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1022)*,* [*1025*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1025)*,* [*1035*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1035)*,* [*1040*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1040)*,* [*1065*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1065)*,* [*1068*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1068)*,* [*1298*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1298)*,* [*1375*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1375)*,* [*1401 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1401), [1523](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1523); nor do the impious act badly in everything, [*642*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.642)*,* [*1035*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1035)*,* [*1040*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1040)*,* [*1395*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1395)*,* [*1523*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1523); nor do they always serve vicious concupiscence, [*1038*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1038)*,* [*1297ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1297)*,* [*1394ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1394)*,* [*1523*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1523). It is not a vice to act without charity in view of an eternal reward, [*1303*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1303).

A just man does not sin in every good work, [771](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.771) [*775 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.775), [804](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.804), [835](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.835), not even venially, [*772*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.772), [804](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.804), [835](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.835); nor is it a sin to reject evil because of its shamefulness without reference to its being an offense against God, [*1299*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1299); nor evil to look to a reward, [804](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.804), [841](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.841), [*1300*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1300), [1303](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1303).

Fear of penalties is good and useful, [*744*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.744)*,* [*798*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.798), [898](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.898), [915](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.915), [*898*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.898)*,* [*915*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.915)*,* [*1411 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1411), and can be supernatural, [898](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.898), [915](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.915), [*898*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.898)*,* [*1304*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1304)*,* [*1525*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1525).

The observance of the commandments is necessary, [804](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.804), [829f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.829), [2273](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2273), with a fight against the flesh, the world, and the devil, [806](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.806) (since faith alone does not suffice, [800](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.800), [804](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.804), [829 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.829)), and it is not impossible, [200](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.200), [804](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.804), [828](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.828), [832](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.832), [*1054*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1054)*,* [*1519*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1519), [2238](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2238), [2241](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2241), it obliges even the perfect, [472 ff](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.472).

### Merit

**XIII b** The good works of the just make a man better, [*380*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.380), and, provided they are done freely, [1094](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1094), they truly merit an increase in grace and glory, [191](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.191), [*517 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.517), [803](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.803), [809](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.809), [834](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.834), [836](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.836), [842](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.842), [*1008*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1008)*,* [*1013–1017*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1013-1017)*,* [*1044*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1044)*,* [*1261*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1261)*,* [*1419*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1419).

The just at the same time by good works or penances inflicted by God, if they suffer them patiently, satisfy for temporal punishments, [807](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.807), [904ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.904), [923f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.923), [*1010*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1010)*,* [*1059*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1059), and that condignly, [*1077*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1077) (without, however, all afflictions being punishments for sins, [*1072*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1072)); which power is derived from grace by which a man is made a son of God and a member of Christ, [134](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.134), [140](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.140), [191](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.191), [287](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.287), [309](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.309), [708](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.708), [809](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.809), [812](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.812), [842](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.842), [904f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.904), [*1011–1018*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1011-1018)*,* [*1031ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1031)*,* [*1062*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1062)*,* [*1070*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1070)*,* [*1077*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1077), with the cooperation of faith, [287](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.287), [430](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.430), [714](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.714), [803](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.803), [809](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.809), [*1008*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1008)*,* [*1062*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1062), so that merits and satisfactions are in some way ours [842](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.842), [*1008*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1008)*,* [*1010*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1010)*,* [*1419*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1419). Merits that have. been lost, with the recovery of the state of grace, revive perfectly at the same time as the grace, [2193](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2193).

### Sin (personal)

*XIII c* To sin (actual) there is presupposed a knowledge of the law, whence it is not committed with invincible ignorance, [*775*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.775)*,* [*1068*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1068)*,* [*1292*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1292), but nevertheless with vincible, [*377*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.377); moreover, it ought to be a voluntary act, [410](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.410), [*775*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.775)*,* [*1046*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1046)*,* [*1050 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1050), by a personal will, [*1291*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1291); placed with true freedom, not only from coercion, [*1094*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1094), but from necessity, [*1039*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1039)*,* [*1041*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1041)*,* [*1066f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1066)*,* [*1291*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1291); nor is the suggestion to sin made by the devil by only placing stones or herbs, [*383*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.383). A grave sin, by which God is not offended (a philosophical sin) does not exist, [*1290*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1290).

By sin (actual) a guilt of sin (habitual sin) is contracted, which is not only the obligation of the penalty, [*1056 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1056); personal sins however are not passed on like original sin, [*1052 f*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1052).

Even one who is justified (although he be perfect, [*471 f*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.471).) can sin mortally, [805](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.805), [833](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.833), [862](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.862).

Mortal sins are those by which God is always offended, [*1290*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1290)*,* [*3018*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=DS.DS+3018), and man is made an enemy of God, [899](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.899), and even a member of the devil, [*628*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.628), to whose power he has handed himself over, [894](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.894), and a servant of sin, [894](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.894), by which the grace of justification is lost, [808](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.808), [837](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.837), [862](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.862), and eternal damnation is incurred, [410](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.410), [464](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.464), [531](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.531), [693](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.693); and there are also sins venial in nature, [106 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.106), [804](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.804), [835](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.835), [*1020*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1020), by which justice is not taken away, [804](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.804), [899](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.899), which are a common evil, [107](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.107) and without a special privilege cannot be avoided completely, [833](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.833).

All mortal sins can be remitted, [43](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.43), [167](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.167), and taken away by perfect charity with the desire for the sacrament, [898](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.898), even before baptism, [*1033*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1033), or by the sacrament of penance (even without charity) [430](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.430), [*724*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.724)*,* [*726 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.726), [798](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.798), [898](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.898), [1146](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1146), [*1536*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1536), sometimes even by extreme unction, [909](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.909).

Venial sins can be taken away in many ways, [899](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.899), [C[[294]](#footnote-295)902](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_902); in confession they are praiseworthily mentioned, [470](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.470), [*748 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.748), [899](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.899), [*1539*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1539), [C[[295]](#footnote-296)902](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_902).

### Christian Perfection

**XIII d** It is possible to increase the justice received through the grace of Christ, [*471*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.471), [803](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.803); the virtues ought to be increased, [*1044*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1044), by observance of the commandments, [*1044*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1044).

The way to perfection is the imitation of Christ, who is the “master and example of all sanctity” [1972](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1972), [2224](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2224), [2232](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2232).

In the threefold way—purgative, illuminative, and unitive ([*1246*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1246)) no one proceeds through quietism (Molinos) [*1221–1288*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1221-1288), but

*there is required* also the exercise of external works, [*1260*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1260), positive resistance against temptation, [*1237*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1237)*,* [*1257*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1257), and against the suggestions of the demon, [*1261 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1261); the use of voluntary mortifications is of help, [*1258 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1258), confession and direction according to theology and philosophy, [*1279*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1279)[*1286f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1286)*,* [*1329*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1329);

progress is *impeded* by a tedium with spiritual things, [*1248*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1248).

Extreme trills do not separate the superior part of the soul (with its voluntary acts) from the inferior (with its involuntary disturbances) [*1340*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1340).

Perfection does not consist in this, that a man lack either concupiscence, which he suffers involuntarily, [*1050 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1050)*,* [*1074 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1074), or every thing of his own and dominion, [494](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.494), [*575 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.575), [2224](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2224), or his own act of choice of will, [*576*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.576), or that he does not pursue things, honors, usefulness, internal devotion, sanctity, reward, the kingdom of heaven, [*508*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.508).

One does not reach so far, that a man lacks alt venial sin, [107](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.107) [804](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.804), [810](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.810) (except from a special privilege, [833](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.833)) [*1276 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1276), or that he become impeccable, [*471*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.471); so that he cannot will anything other than what God wills, [*1281*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1281), so that he cannot make further progress in grace, [*471*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.471), so that he can be found more perfect than Christ, [*471*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.471), so that he may attain an immobile state in imperturbable peace, [*1282*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1282), or death of the senses, [*1283*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1283), or finally that in this life he might have final happiness, [*474*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.474), and that he may be transformed into God, [*1225*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1225) (as totally as in the Eucharist the bread into the body of Christ, [*510*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.510)), so that he may be made one, not only like to God, [*510*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.510), and hence he may have the whole that the Father gave to the Son, [*511 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.511)*,* [*520 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.520), and he may do whatever God does and may generate the Son Himself, [*513*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.513);

*so that he is not bound* to keep the commandments, [804](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.804), [830](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.830), and obey human power or that of the Church, [*472*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.472), [1970](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1970), to pray and to conquer concupiscence, [*472*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.472)*,* [*1275 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1275); to exercise himself in acts of virtue, [*476*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.476), [806](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.806), [*1251*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1251)*,* [*1347*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1347), or in internal acts only, [*518*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.518), to show reverence to the Eucharistic Christ, [*478*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.478), to love God more than his neighbor, [*525*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.525):

*so that he may habitually love* God without there being any admixture of his own motive, [*1327 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1327), even with regard to eternity, [*1335 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1335), with regard to discursive acts (in meditation) [*1341 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1341), with regard to the love of God Himself as a perfection of his own, [*1345*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1345), and with regard to the remission of sins, [*1346*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1346);

*so that he may know* with the certitude of faith that he is in the state of grace, [1418](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1418), nor “confident” faith, [802](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.802), or (without special revelation) that he is predestined, [805](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.805), [825](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.825), [833](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.833), and that he will persevere, [1418](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1418), nor “confident” faith, [802](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.802), [806](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.806), [826](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.826).

**XIII e** Religious perfection (in a community) is especially commended by the Church, [980](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.980), [1973](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1973), and it is defended against detractors: against William of St. Amour, [*458 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.458), against Wiclif, [*600–604*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.600-604)*,* [*614f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.614)*,* [*624 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.624), [680](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.680), against the Jansenists, [*1310 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1310), against the Pistorians, [*1580–1590*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1580-1590), against naturalists, [1692](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1692), [*1752 f*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1752).

In particular the Order of Preachers and Friars Minor are praised, [*459*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.459).

Vows made after baptism are not invalid by force of the promise made in baptism, [865](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.865).

Vows are not impediments to perfection, [*1223*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1223), [1973](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1973).

The scope of the vow of obedience of religious does not always pertain to the exterior, [*1285*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1285).

The solemn vow of chastity prevents a valid marriage, [979](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.979), [C[[296]](#footnote-297)1073](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1073), and dissolves a sanctioned nonconsummated marriage, [976](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.976), [C[[297]](#footnote-298)1119](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1119).

# GOD THE CONSUMMATOR

## THE LAST THINGS FOR INDIVIDUAL MEN

**XIV a** Death is a penalty for sin, [101](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.101), [175](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.175), [793](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.793); the Judgment (particular) follows immediately after this, [464](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.464), [530f.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.530), [693](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.693).—Before the time of the redemption the patriarchs etc., did not dwell in Paradise, [160a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.160a), nor did they go to heaven before the death of Christ, [410](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.410).

Those who die after baptism without personal sin or otherwise without sin and penalty, immediately (the inclinations to sin being no obstacle, [*743*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.743)) attain heaven, [457](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.457), [464](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.464), [530](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.530), [570s](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.570s), [693](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.693), [696](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.696), to enter which the state of grace is required, [800](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.800), [809](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.809), [842](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.842), [*1011*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1011). Heaven or the state of happiness is not a substantial transformation into God, [*510*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.510), but the elevation of man to supernatural happiness, [1808](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1808), which cannot be investigated by reason alone, [1669](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1669), nor had in this life, [*474 f.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.474), but in the future, [287](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.287); and consists in the immediate, intuitive, face to face vision and enjoyment of God, [530](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.530), [570s](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.570s), [574a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.574a), [693](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.693), [1647](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1647), [*1928 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1928), in which God is seen not merely acting toward things outside Himself, [*1928*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1928), nor merely shining forth from created vestiges, [*1929*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1929), nor merely as provider, redeemer, sanctifier, [*1930*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1930), but as He is in Himself, [530](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.530); faith and hope are done away with, [530](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.530), but chaste fear is not excluded, [382](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.382). The vision takes place through the light of glory, [*475*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.475)*,* [*1928 ff.*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1928): it is had without interruption, [530](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.530), and it is eternal, [16](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.16), [40](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.40), [228a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.228a), [347](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.347), [429](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.429), [464](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.464), [*1716*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1716), [1793](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1793); it is the reward of good works, [714](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.714), [809](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.809), [936](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.936), [842](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.842); it admits of degrees, [693](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.693), [842](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.842); but it is greater than works (in the sense of Baius) [*1014*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1014).

The souls of those who die in the state of grace, but with venial faults or temporal penalties not yet satisfied are detained in Purgatory, [456](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.456), [570s](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.570s), [603](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.603), [840](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.840), [983](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.983), [998](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.998), [2147a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2147a), concerning the existence of which it is certain from Scripture, [456](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.456), [*777*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.777); which does not consist in only the fears of one about to die, [*744*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.744); but in satisfactory penalties which the souls suffer, [464](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.464), [530](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.530), [570s](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.570s), [693](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.693), [840](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.840), [983](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.983), while they are tormented by fire, [570s](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.570s), secure, nevertheless, concerning their salvation, but are outside the state of merit, [778](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.778), they do not sin by seeking rest or by abhorring the penalties, [*779*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.779); they are helped by the prayers, satisfactory acts, and alms of the living, [427](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.427), [456](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.456), [464](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.464), [*535*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.535), [693](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.693), [780](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.780), [983](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.983), [998](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.998), by indulgences, [723a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.723a), [*729*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.729)*,* [*1542*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1542), [C[[298]](#footnote-299)911](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_911), especially by the sacrifice of the Mass, [427](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.427), [693](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.693), [983](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.983), [1469](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1469).

Those on the other hand who die in original sin or grave personal sin (or outside the Church, [714](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.714)) immediately descend into Hell, [40](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.40), [321](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.321), [410](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.410), [429](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.429), [457](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.457), [464](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.464), [493a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.493a), [531](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.531), [574a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.574a), [693](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.693), [714](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.714), [*1290*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1290)*,* [*1525*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1525), which was not destroyed through Christ, [*536*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.536), [574a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.574a); where they are punished by different punishments, [493a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.493a), namely, by loss or by the lack of the vision of God for sin both original and personal, [321](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.321), [410](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.410), [464](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.464), [693](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.693), and by the sensation or torments (of fire) by which those “who lived evilly” are punished, [40](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.40), [160b](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.160b), [228a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.228a), [410](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.410), [429](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.429), [531](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.531), [714](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.714), [1677](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1677).

The punishments of Hell are eternal, [16](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.16), [40](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.40), [160b](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.160b), [*211*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.211), [228a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.228a), [410](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.410), [429](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.429), [457](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.457), [570](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.570), [714](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.714); but little children (in Limbo) who died without baptism do not suffer the punishment of fire, [410](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.410), [*1526*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1526); who, however, do not go into an earthly paradise, [*534*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.534), but to a place different from the place of the other damned, [228a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.228a), [531](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.531), with their own and blaspheming God from an habitually dominating will, [1049](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1049).

The soul of a person who dies in a natural state does not completely lack all activity, [*1913*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1913).

### THE END OF THE WORLD

(Chiliasmus)

**XIV b** Chiliasm cannot safely be taught, [2296](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.2296).

The world ought not to be consumed naturally, [*717a*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.717a).

In the consummation of the world there will be a resurrection of the dead, [1 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.1), [13](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.13), [16](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.16), [20](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.20), [30](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.30), [86](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.86), [242](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.242), [347](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.347), and indeed of all, [40](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.40), [287](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.287), even of the damned, [228a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.228a) [531](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.531), with their own bodies, [20](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.20), [40](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.40), [347](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.347), [427](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.427), [429](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.429), [464](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.464), [531](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.531), which will not be purely spiritual or orbicular, [207](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.207), [287](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.287).

Then there will follow a universal Judgment, [54](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.54), [86](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.86), [531](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.531), [994](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.994), which will not be carried out by the Father, [384](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.384), but through Christ, [13](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.13), [40](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.40), [86](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.86), [255](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.255), [287](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.287), [422](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.422), [427](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.427), [462](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.462), [464](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.464), who renders to each according to his works, [228a](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.228a), [287](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.287), [344](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.344), [429](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.429), [344](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.344), [427](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.427), [429](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.429), [462](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.462), [531](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.531), [693](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.693); when this is done, then the Church will reign with Him forever, [287](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.287);—nor will there ever be by any metamorphosis of the demons or of impious men, [*211*](https://ref.ly/logosres/srccatdogma?ref=SCD.211).

Henry Denzinger and Karl Rahner, eds., *The Sources of Catholic Dogma*, trans. Roy J. Deferrari (St. Louis, MO: B. Herder Book Co., 1954).  
Page 49. Exported from [Logos Bible Software](https://www.logos.com/), 8:28 AM February 9, 2024.

1. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1323,_1$C2$B0) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-2)
2. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1324) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-3)
3. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1323,_1$C2$B0) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-4)
4. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1391) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-5)
5. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1323,_1$C2$B0) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-6)
6. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1366) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-7)
7. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_100) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-8)
8. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_107) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-9)
9. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_108) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-10)
10. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_329) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-11)
11. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_948) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-12)
12. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_218) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-13)
13. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_731,_$C2$A72) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-14)
14. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1322) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-15)
15. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1322) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-16)
16. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1322) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-17)
17. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1322) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-18)
18. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1323,_2$C2$B0) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-19)
19. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_222,_$C2$A72) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-20)
20. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_227) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-21)
21. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1322) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-22)
22. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_223) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-23)
23. [*C*](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1326) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-24)
24. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1323,_1$C2$B0) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-25)
25. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1326) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-26)
26. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1323,_1$C2$B0) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-27)
27. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_247) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-28)
28. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1324) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-29)
29. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1322) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-30)
30. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1553) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-31)
31. C A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-32)
32. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_731) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-33)
33. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1016) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-34)
34. C A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-35)
35. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1327) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-36)
36. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_109) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-37)
37. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_109) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-38)
38. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1352) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-39)
39. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_487) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-40)
40. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_911) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-41)
41. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1247) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-42)
42. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_589) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-43)
43. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1365) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-44)
44. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1327) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-45)
45. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1381) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-46)
46. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1495) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-47)
47. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1499) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-48)
48. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1566) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-49)
49. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1597) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-50)
50. C A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-51)
51. C A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-52)
52. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1557) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-53)
53. C A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-54)
54. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1372-1383) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-55)
55. C A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-56)
56. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_218) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-57)
57. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_218) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-58)
58. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_109) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-59)
59. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_219) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-60)
60. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_218) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-61)
61. C A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-62)
62. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_218) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-63)
63. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1557) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-64)
64. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_87) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-65)
65. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1325) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-66)
66. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_218) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-67)
67. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_222,_$C2$A72) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-68)
68. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_329) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-69)
69. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_81) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-70)
70. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1569) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-71)
71. C A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-72)
72. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1556) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-73)
73. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_893) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-74)
74. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_895) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-75)
75. C A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-76)
76. C A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-77)
77. C A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-78)
78. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1569) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-79)
79. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1323,_2$C2$B0) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-80)
80. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_218) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-81)
81. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1332) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-82)
82. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_160) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-83)
83. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_219) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-84)
84. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1255) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-85)
85. n Leo XIII accepted the profession of faith offered by Nicephorus, Patriarch of Constantinople, in the year 811, according to which God “also preserved the virgin who supernaturally and ineffably had given birth; after the bringing forth, her virginity according to nature in no part being changed or destroyed.” [MG 100, 186 B]. [↑](#footnote-ref-86)
86. n Leo XIII accepted the profession of faith offered by Nicephorus, Patriarch of Constantinople, in the year 811, according to which God “also preserved the virgin who supernaturally and ineffably had given birth; after the bringing forth, her virginity according to nature in no part being changed or destroyed.” [MG 100, 186 B]. [↑](#footnote-ref-87)
87. n The monk, Eadmar, *The Excellence of the Virgin Mary*, c. 9 [ML 159, 573]. Cf. what Benedict XV, *Litt. Apost.*, “Inter sodalicia,” March 22, 1918 (AAS 10 [1918] 182) holds: “So did she suffer with her suffering and dying son, and almost die; so did she abdicate her maternal rights over her Son for the salvation of men, and to placate God’s justice, insofar as was fitting for her, so did she sacrifice her Son, that it can properly he said that she with Christ redeemed the human race”; and also, what Pius XI has, *Litt. Apost.*, “Explorata res,” February 2, 1923 (AAS 15 [1923] 104): “The Virgin participated with Jesus Christ in the very painful act of redemption.” In the decree of the S.C. of the Holy Office (section on Indulgences), “Sunt quos amor,” June 26, 1913 (AAS 5 [1913] 364), he praises the custom of adding to the name of Jesus the name of “His Mother, our coredemptor, the blessed Mary”; cf. also the prayer enriched by the Holy Office with an indulgence, in which the Blessed Virgin Mary is called “coredemptress of the human race” (Jan. 22, 1914; AAS 6 [1914] 108). [↑](#footnote-ref-88)
88. note CL VI 842 c f.; AP I 616; ACol 238; *Analecta Iuris Pontificii* I, 1218.—PIUS IX promulgated the definition of the Immaculate Conception of the Blessed Virgin Mary, with the whole Catholic world asking for it and approving. Afterwards, at the time of the Vatican Council, 204 bishops and theologians urged a dogmatic definition concerning the Assumption of the Blessed Virgin Mary for this reason: that, unless the “very firm belief of the Church regarding the Assumption of the Blessed Virgin is to be called a very tenuous belief—which it is impious to think of—, it should be most firmly held, that it (the Assumption) has its origin from the divine-apostolic tradition, i.e., revelation” [CL VII 868 ff.]. [↑](#footnote-ref-89)
89. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_25) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-90)
90. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1325) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-91)
91. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1325) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-92)
92. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1255) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-93)
93. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1276) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-94)
94. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1276) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-95)
95. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1276) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-96)
96. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1276) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-97)
97. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1255) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-98)
98. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_773) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-99)
99. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_818) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-100)
100. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_814) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-101)
101. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_757) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-102)
102. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_885) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-103)
103. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1101) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-104)
104. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_727) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-105)
105. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_87) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-106)
106. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_682) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-107)
107. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_682) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-108)
108. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1248) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-109)
109. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_785) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-110)
110. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_853) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-111)
111. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_886) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-112)
112. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_892) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-113)
113. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_939) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-114)
114. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1331) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-115)
115. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1251) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-116)
116. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1374) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-117)
117. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1240) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-118)
118. C A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-119)
119. C A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-120)
120. C A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-121)
121. C A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-122)
122. C A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-123)
123. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1129) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-124)
124. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1512) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-125)
125. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_731,_$C2$A71) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-126)
126. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_731,_$C2$A71) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-127)
127. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_742) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-128)
128. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_733) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-129)
129. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_731,_$C2$A71) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-130)
130. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_732) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-131)
131. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_733) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-132)
132. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_746) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-133)
133. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_731,_$C2$A72) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-134)
134. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_737) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-135)
135. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_737) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-136)
136. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_737) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-137)
137. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_737) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-138)
138. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_758) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-139)
139. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_87) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-140)
140. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_87) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-141)
141. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1126) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-142)
142. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_738) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-143)
143. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_741) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-144)
144. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_742) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-145)
145. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_742) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-146)
146. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_737) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-147)
147. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_737) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-148)
148. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_745) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-149)
149. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_750) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-150)
150. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_732) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-151)
151. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_737) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-152)
152. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_746) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-153)
153. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_752) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-154)
154. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_762) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-155)
155. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_781) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-156)
156. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_780) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-157)
157. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_781) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-158)
158. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_732) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-159)
159. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_782,_$C2$A71) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-160)
160. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_782,_$C2$A72) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-161)
161. AAS *Acta Apostolicae Sedis.* Commentarium officiale. Romae, 1909 (tomus I) ff. [↑](#footnote-ref-162)
162. n BB (M) 2, 82 ff. [old ed. I n. 78]; NBR 16, 148 ff. [↑](#footnote-ref-163)
163. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_786) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-164)
164. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_787) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-165)
165. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_815) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-166)
166. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_816) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-167)
167. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_815) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-168)
168. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_814) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-169)
169. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_802) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-170)
170. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_802) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-171)
171. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_807) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-172)
172. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1265) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-173)
173. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1255) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-174)
174. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_863) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-175)
175. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_852) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-176)
176. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_845,_$C2$A71) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-177)
177. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_845,_$C2$A72) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-178)
178. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_854) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-179)
179. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_859) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-180)
180. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_861) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-181)
181. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_856) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-182)
182. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_858) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-183)
183. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_847) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-184)
184. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_864) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-185)
185. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_863) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-186)
186. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_863) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-187)
187. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_863) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-188)
188. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_828) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-189)
189. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_809) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-190)
190. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_818) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-191)
191. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_814) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-192)
192. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_817) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-193)
193. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_901) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-194)
194. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_901) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-195)
195. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_902) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-196)
196. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_903) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-197)
197. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_887) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-198)
198. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_887) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-199)
199. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_870) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-200)
200. C A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-201)
201. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_871) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-202)
202. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_872) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-203)
203. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_872) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-204)
204. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_889) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-205)
205. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_888) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-206)
206. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_901) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-207)
207. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_886) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-208)
208. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_906) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-209)
209. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_905) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-210)
210. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_907) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-211)
211. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_911) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-212)
212. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_911) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-213)
213. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_911) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-214)
214. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_912) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-215)
215. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_349) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-216)
216. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_911) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-217)
217. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_911) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-218)
218. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_925) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-219)
219. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_925) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-220)
220. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_937) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-221)
221. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_945) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-222)
222. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_945) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-223)
223. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_946) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-224)
224. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_938,_$C2$A71) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-225)
225. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_940) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-226)
226. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_940) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-227)
227. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_944) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-228)
228. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_949) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-229)
229. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_109) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-230)
230. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_108,_$C2$A73) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-231)
231. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_949) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-232)
232. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_949) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-233)
233. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_111,_$C2$A72) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-234)
234. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_108) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-235)
235. n On the sense and force of this part see what is set forth by G. M. Card. van Rossum, *De essentia sacramenti Ordinis*, Friburgi, Brisq., ed. 2 (1931): 174 ff. On the same subject Benedict XIV [*De Synodo* 1. 8, c. 10, n. 8 ff. (ed. Mechl. II, 223 ff.)] had already acted, but it is not clear from his words to what opinion he decrees that adherence should be given [see *ibid.* n. II]. It is established that for nine centuries earlier the imposition of hands alone prevailed in the Church, not only Western but also Eastern, and that this is the only matter even to the present day among some Easterners, as, for example, the Greeks. Clement VIII in Instr. “Presbyteri Graeci,” August 31, 1595 [MBR 3, 53 a sect. 7], ordered that a Greek bishop be always present in Rome to confer orders on Greek students in this rite, and Urban VIII in a brief “Universalis Ecclesiae,” Nov. 23, 1624 [MBR 4, 172 a ff.] confirmed this. Benedict XIV in the Bull “Etsi pastoralis,” May 26, 1742, issued for Italo-Greeks, said: “Let Greek bishops in conferring orders preserve their own Greek rite as described in the Euchologium,” and in Const. “Demandatum coelitus,” Dec. 24, 1743, he forbade that any innovation be made in the rites of the Greeks [cf. BB (M) 1, 342 ff.; 2, 148 ff.; MBR 16, 99 a ff.; 166 b ff.]. Finally Leo XIII in the Bull “Orientalium dignitas Ecclesiarum,” Nov. 30, 1894, confirmed this Constitution of Benedict XIV [cf. ASS 27 (1894/95) 257; AL V 303 ff.]. [↑](#footnote-ref-236)
236. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_948) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-237)
237. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_732) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-238)
238. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_732) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-239)
239. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_951) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-240)
240. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_734) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-241)
241. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_781) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-242)
242. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_734) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-243)
243. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_945) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-244)
244. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_802) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-245)
245. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_871) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-246)
246. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_938,_$C2$A71) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-247)
247. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_738) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-248)
248. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_782,_$C2$A71) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-249)
249. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_782,_$C2$A72) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-250)
250. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_211) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-251)
251. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_132) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-252)
252. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_135) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-253)
253. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_951) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-254)
254. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_951) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-255)
255. C A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-256)
256. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_968,_$C2$A71) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-257)
257. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_968,_$C2$A71) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-258)
258. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_973) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-259)
259. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_983) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-260)
260. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_990) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-261)
261. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_964) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-262)
262. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_729) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-263)
263. C A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-264)
264. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1012) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-265)
265. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1092) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-266)
266. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1081) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-267)
267. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1088) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-268)
268. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1086,_$C2$A71) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-269)
269. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1088) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-270)
270. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1015) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-271)
271. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1110) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-272)
272. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1013) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-273)
273. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1110) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-274)
274. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1110) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-275)
275. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1129) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-276)
276. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1119) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-277)
277. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1119) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-278)
278. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1118) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-279)
279. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1120) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-280)
280. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1035) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-281)
281. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1036) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-282)
282. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1016) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-283)
283. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1038) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-284)
284. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1142) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-285)
285. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1070) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-286)
286. n Many synods and various Pontiffs have published decrees on (mixed) marriages, e.g., the Synod of Laodicea (between 343 and 381), c. 10, 31; that of Alvira (between 300 and 306), c. 16; that of Carthage III (397), c. 12; that of Agde, c. 67; that of Auvergne (535), c. 4; that of Toulouse (694); that of Chalcedon (451), can. 14; that of Worms (1575); that of Antwerp (1576); that of York (1576); that of Luxeuil (1580); that of Bordeaux (1583); that of Tours (1583); that of Narbonne and Constance (1609); that of Ermeland and Augusta (1610); that of Hertogenbosch (1612); that of Luttich (1618); that of Bordeaux (1624); that of Antwerp (1643); that of Gratianopolis (1690); that of Cologne (1651); that of Paderborn (1658); that of Kulm and of Pressburg (1745); that of Sitten (1651); that of Saint-Omer (1640); that of Ermeland (1726). Furthermore, the Pontiffs: Boniface V (c. 617), Stephen IV (c. 770), Nicholas I (*Resp. ad Consult. Bulgar* n. 22), Boniface VIII (*Decret.* VI 5, 24), Urban VIII (1624), Clement X (ep. d. Aug. 20, 1628), Clement XI (1706), Benedict XIV [cf. n. [1455](https://ref.ly/logosref/SCD.1455)], Clement XIII (1763), Pius VIII (1830), Gregory XVI (1832 etc.), Pius IX [cf. n. [1640](https://ref.ly/logosref/SCD.1640), [1765 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosref/SCD.1765)], Leo XIII [cf. n. [1853 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosref/SCD.1853), [1865](https://ref.ly/logosref/SCD.1865)], Pius X [cf. n. [1991](https://ref.ly/logosref/SCD.1991), [2066 ff.](https://ref.ly/logosref/SCD.2066)]; Codex I. C. can. 1060–1064 c. notis. [↑](#footnote-ref-287)
287. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1060) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-288)
288. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1144) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-289)
289. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1148,_$C2$A72) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-290)
290. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1151) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-291)
291. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1146) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-292)
292. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1149) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-293)
293. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1152) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-294)
294. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_902) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-295)
295. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_902) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-296)
296. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1073) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-297)
297. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_1119) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-298)
298. [C](https://ref.ly/logosref/CIC.CIC_911) A canon of the *Code of canon law* [↑](#footnote-ref-299)